Radio Shack

THREE DOLLARS AND NINETY-FIVE CENTS

62-2006

TRS-80 Assembly-Language Programming

TRS-80 Assembly-Language Programming

by

William Barden, Jr.

Radio Shack®
A TANDY CORPORATION COMPANY

FIRST EDITION
THIRD PRINTING—1980

Copyright © 1979 by Radio Shack, a Tandy Corporation Company, Fort Worth, Texas 76107. Printed in the United States of America.

All rights reserved. Reproduction or use, without express permission, of editorial or pictorial content, in any manner, is prohibited. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 79-63607

Preface

Why study assembly language programming for the Radio Shack TRS-80? Why when I was a youngster all we had was Level I BASIC to work with and we did all right with that! Well, BASIC, whether it is Level I, Level II, or Disc, is still just as useful as ever. There are times, though, when the absolute fastest possible processing is called for. That is one case where assembly language reigns supreme. Programs run at assembly-language speeds are up to 300 times faster than their BASIC equivalents! Did you ever want to try your hand at the most elemental type of coding to see if you could construct a program in similar fashion to building electronic circuits from discrete components? Assembly-language will give you that challenge. How about your memory requirements? Do you find that you always require 4K bytes more than you have in RAM? Assembly language will enable you to run a program in 4K that requires 24K in BASIC. Did you ever have an urge to see what is going on in all of those routines in ROM or TRSDOS? You guessed it—assemhly language again.

The goal of this book is to take a TRS-80 user familiar with some of the concepts of programming in BASIC and introduce him to TRS-80 assembly language. The text does not absolutely require a Radio Shack Editor/Assembler package, but it will help. If your system will not support an Editor/Assembler, then Radio Shack T-BUG can be used to key in all of the programs in this hook without assembling—we've done that for you. We *have* designed the book to be highly interactive. There are many programs that can be assembled and loaded, or simply keyed in using T-BUG, and that illustrate the techniques of assembly-language programming as they relate to the TRS-80. We have routines to write data to the screen, to move patterns at high-speed, to graphically illustrate a bubble sort, and even a routine to play music by using the cassette output! Of course, you may also use the

book simply as a reference book for assembly-language routines. The last chapter has a dozen or so "standard" assembly-language routines that can be used in your own assembly-language coding.

Section I of this book covers the general concepts of TRS-80 assembly language. The TRS-80 uses a Z-80 microprocessor, and the architecture of both the TRS-80 and Z-80 are covered in Chapter 1. Chapter 2 talks about the instruction set of the Z-80. There are hundreds of actual instructions, but they can easily be grouped into a manageable number of types. Chapter 3 discusses the many addressing modes available for instructions in the Z-80. Assembly-language programming operations and formats are covered in Chapter 4, while Chapter 5 covers T-BUG and machine-language programming.

The second section of the book discusses various types of programming operations and provides many examples of each type. Chapter 6 shows how data is transferred within the TRS-80, between memory and central processing unit and between other parts of the system. Arithmetic and compare operations are covered in Chapter 7; this chapter describes how the Z-80 adds and subtracts, along with a description of different types of number formats. Chapter 8 gives examples of logical and bit operations and shifts, some of the most powerful instructions in the Z-80. Chapter 9 describes how assembly-language programs perform string manipulations and process data in tables. Chapter 10 talks about input/output operations, one of the most mysterious (unjustifiably so) areas of computer programming. The last chapter contains the previously mentioned common subroutines.

Two appendices provide a cross-reference of Z-80 operation codes and instruction set. Appendix I lists the Z-80 instruction set by function (add, subtract, etc.) while Appendix II provides a detailed alphabetized listing of all instructions.

If you suspect that assembly-language might be for you, then by all means give it a try. You have nothing to lose but your GOSUBs (and other BASIC statements). The author hopes that you have as much fun in sampling the programs in this book as he did in constructing them.

WILLIAM BARDEN, JR.

To Marguerite

Contents

Section I. General Concepts

CHAPTER 1

TRS-80 AND Z-80 ARCHITECTURE 11

Functional Blocks — What Are All These Ones and Zeros — CPU, Memory, and I/O—The Z-80: A Chip Off the Old Block

CHAPTER 2

Z-80 INSTRUCTIONS 24

The Z-80 Family Tree—How Long Is an Instruction—Wait a Microsecond—Instruction Groups—Data Movement—Arithmetic, Logical, and Compare — Decision Making and Jumps — Stack Operations—Shifting and Bit Operations—I/O Operations—A Program of a Thousand Instructions Begins With the First Bit

CHAPTER 3

Z-80 ADDRESSING 41

Why Not One Addressing Mode—Implied Addressing: No Addressing at All—Immediate Addressing—Register Addressing —Register Indirect—Direct Addressing—Relative Addressing —A Special Type of Call—Indexed Addressing—Bit Addressing—Conclusion and Confusion

CHAPTER 4

ASSEMBLY-LANGUAGE PROGRAMMING 58

Machine-Language Coding—TRS-80 Editor/Assembler—Editing New Programs—Assembling—Loading—Assembler Formats—More Pseudo-Ops—A Mark II Version of the Store "1" Program—Further Editing and Assembling

CHAPTER 5

T-BUG AND DEBUGGING 75

Loading and Using T-BUG—T-BUG Commands—T-BUG Tape Formats—Standard Format in Following Chapters

Section II. Programming Methods

CHAPTER 6

MOVING DATA IN BYTES, WORDS, AND BLOCKS 87

Byte and Word Moves—Filling or Padding—An Unsophisticated Block Move—An Elegant Block Move—FILL Subroutine—MOVE Subroutine—Subroutine Format—Stack Operation

CHAPTER 7

ARITHMETIC AND COMPARE OPERATIONS 108

Number Formats: Absolutely and Positively—Signed Numbers—Adding and Subtracting 8-Bit Numbers—Adding and Subtracting 16-Bit Numbers—A Precision Instrument—Decimal Arithmetic—Compare Operations

CHAPTER 8

LOGICAL OPERATIONS, BIT OPERATIONS, AND SHIFTS 131

ANDs, ORs, and Exclusive ORs—Bit Instructions—Shiftless Computers—Rotates—Some Shifting Is Very Logical—Arithmetic Shifts—Software Multiply and Divide—Input and Output Conversions

CHAPTER 9

STRINGS AND TABLES 151

Assembler-Generated Strings — Generalized String Output — String Input—Block Compares—Table Searches—Unordered Tables—Ordered Tables

CHAPTER 10

I/O OPERATIONS 167

Memory Versus I/O—Keyboard Decoding—Display Programming—Mysteries of the Cassette Revealed—Real-World Interfacing—Discrete Inputs

CHAPTER 11

COMMON SUBROUTINE 189

FILL Subroutine—MOVE Subroutine—MULADD Subroutine—MULSUB Subroutine—COMPARE Subroutine—MUL16 Subroutine—DIV16 Subroutine—HEXCV Subroutine—SEARCH Subroutine—SET, RESET and TEST Subroutines

Section III. Appendices

APPENDIX I

Z-80 INSTRUCTION SET 205

APPENDIX II

Z-80 OPERATION CODE LISTINGS 209

INDEX 221

SECTION I

General Concepts

CHAPTER 1

TRS-80 and Z-80 Architecture

This chapter will discuss the architecture of the TRS-80, with special consideration to the Z-80 microprocessor contained within the TRS-80. What is a microprocessor? What is a Z-80? Why do I need to know about it to program in assembly language? Why are we asking so many hypothetical questions? These and other questions will be answered in this chapter as we attempt to unravel the mysteries of the *architecture* or general functional blocks of the TRS-80 system. Stay tuned to this text. . . .

Functional Blocks

All computer systems are made up of three rather distinct parts shown in Figure 1-1. The *cpu*, or *c*entral *p*rocessing *u*nit, is the chief controller of the computer system. It fetches and executes instructions, does arithmetic calculations, moves data between the other parts of the system, and in general, controls all sequencing and timing of the system. The *memory* of the system holds a computer program or programs and various types of data. The *I/O*, or *i*nput/*o*utput devices of the system, allow a user to talk to the computer system in a manner in which he is familiar, such as a typewriter-style keyboard or display of characters on a crt screen.

As a TRS-80 user, you're undoubtedly familiar with these component parts. You have a nodding acquaintance with RAM memory from upgrading your system to 16K and perhaps more than just a casual relationship with an expansion interface and disc. To enable us to do assembly-language program-

ming properly, however, we are going to have to get more familiar with memory and I/O and (much to the dismay of our spouses, who are already computer widows or widowers) rather *intimately* involved with the cpu portion of the TRS-80 system. In addition, in later chapters, we're going to leave an old friend, BASIC, and strike up a relationship with assembly-language principles.

What Are All These Ones and Zeros?

Up to this point in your programming career, you have probahly used decimal values for such things as constants,

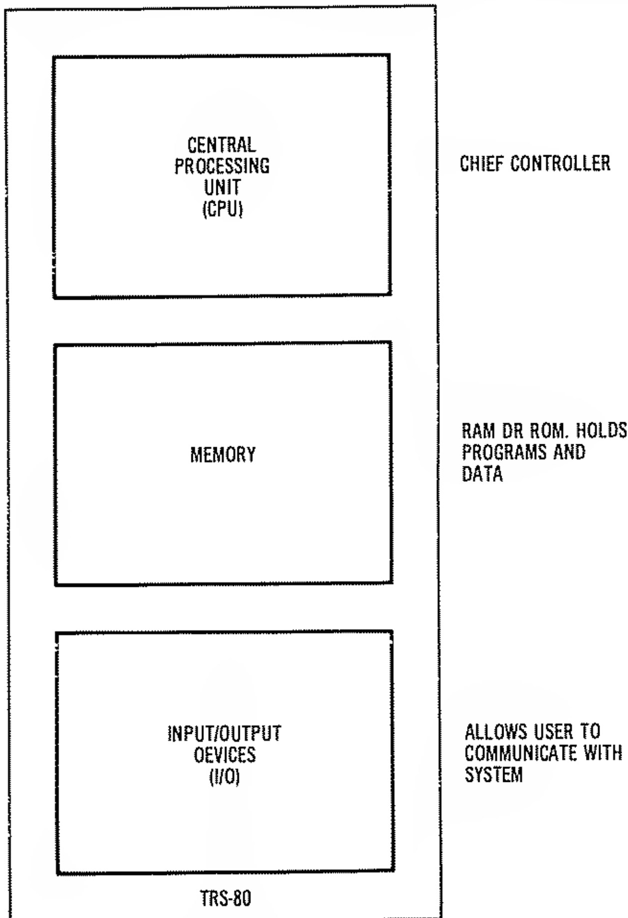


Fig. 1-1. Functional blocks of the TRS-80.

memory addresses, and POKEs. Assemhly-language programming makes extensive use of *binary* data and *hexadecimal* data. Don't let these terms frighten you. They're really more simple than decimal data. Binary representation is a way of expressing numeric values using the hinary digits of 0 and 1, rather than the decimal digits of 0 through 9. Binary digits represent an "on" or "off" condition. A wall switch is either on or off. An indicator light is either lighted or unlighted. In similar fashion, the transistors within the cpu portion of the TRS-80 are either on or off and hold hinary values.

Now we know that in a decimal number such as 921 the 9 represents 9 hundreds, the 2 represents 2 tens, and the 1 represents 1 units, as shown in Figure 1-2. In a hinary number,

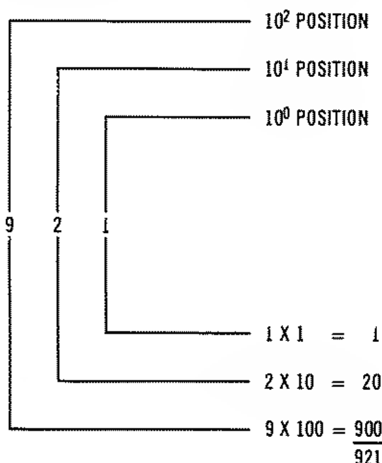


Fig. 1-2. Decimal notation.

the position of the digits represent powers of *two* rather than powers of *ten*. Instead of units, tens, hundreds, and other powers of ten, a binary number is made up of digits representing units, two, four, eight, sixteen, and other powers of two, as shown in Figure 1-3. Since there are only two hinary digits, the digit at each position represents either 0 or 1 times the power of two for that position.

If the hinary numher is treated as groups of four hinary digits, the hinary numher can be converted into a *hexadecimal* numher. Hexadecimal means nothing more than powers of sixteen. The groups of four hits represent 0000 through 1111. Now, 0000 through 1001 correspond to the decimal digits 0 through 9, and the hexadecimal digits for 0000 through 1001 are similarly designated 0 through 9. This leaves the groups

of bits from 1010 through 1111. When the hexadecimal system was first proposed, one of the more obscure computer scientists proposed that the remaining six groups be designated actinium, barium, curium, dysprosium, erbium, and fernium. Cooler heads prevailed, however, and the digits were named A, B, C, D, E, and F.

In general we'll be working with groups of eight binary digits or sixteen binary digits within the TRS-80. *B*inary dig*it* was long ago shortened to *bit* to prompt shorter lunches in the computer science cafeteria when researchers started talking shop. Whenever bit is used, then, it will mean one binary digit of either a 1 or 0. A group of four bits may be referred

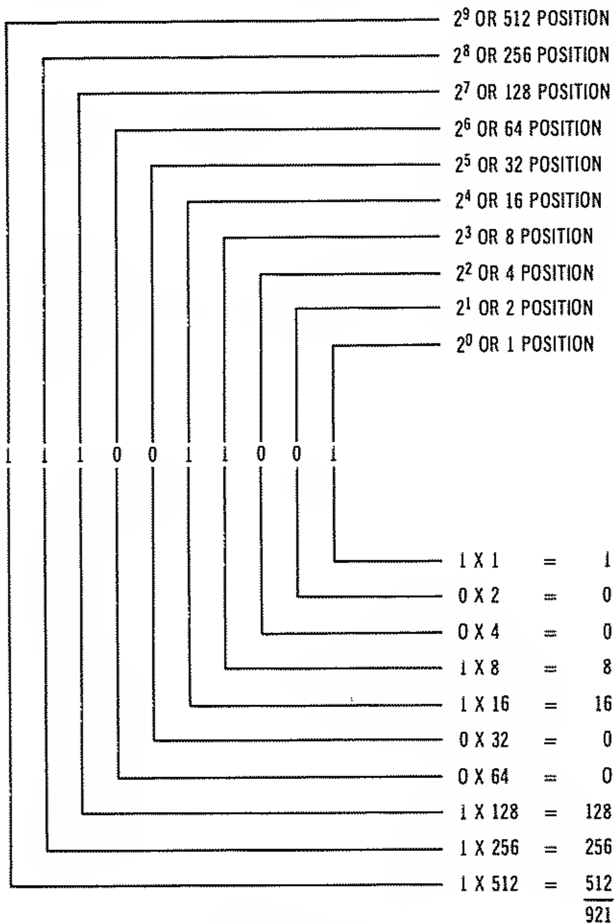


Fig. 1-3. Binary notation.

to as a hexadecimal digit of 0 through F. When this is done, the suffix *H* is added. The symbol EH, therefore, represents the hexadecimal digit E or the binary digits 1110. A group of eight bits is commonly called a *byte*. A byte is made up of two hexadecimal digits, since there are two groups of four bits.

Don't be too worried about the use of bits, bytes, and hexadecimal digits at this point. We'll reiterate some of these basic points as we go along in the text.

CPU, Memory, and I/O

Generally, all elements of the TRS-80 work with binary data. Each memory location, for example, is made up of eight bits, and can represent values from 00000000 through 11111111, or zero through 255 decimal. I/O devices such as cassette tape or floppy disc communicate with the cpu by transferring 8-bit bytes and converting between bytes of data and *bit streams*. The cpu is similarly a binary *digital* device, holding all data or control signals as discrete bits of information.

Let's talk a little bit (no pun intended) about the cpu. As we mentioned before, the cpu is primarily concerned with fetching and executing instructions. What are the types of instructions that the cpu can perform? Obviously, it would be very difficult to implement an instruction such as "if this is Friday blink the screen cursor on and off at location 512." It would be *possible* to implement this instruction, but as you might guess, it would be much more practical to implement a basic set of general-purpose instructions such as "add two numbers" or "compare the result with 67." As a matter of fact the *instruction set* of the TRS-80 at this cpu level is very similar to the instruction set of other microcomputers and the instruction sets of even very large computers. The instruction set of the TRS-80 allows for adding two *operands*, subtracting two operands, performing logical operations on two operands (such as AND or OR), transferring 8 or 16 bits of data between the cpu and memory or I/O devices, jumping to another portion of the program (similar to GOTO or IF . . . THEN), jumping to and returning from subroutines, and testing and manipulating bits.

Every application, including the Level I and II BASIC programs in ROM, and extending to such applications as high-speed video games and business payroll is made up of sequences of these rudimentary instructions such as adds, com-

pares, and jumps. As a matter of fact, *every* program, even those written in BASIC, ultimately resolves down to a sequence of these basic cpu instructions.

In older computer systems each of the component parts literally occupied rooms. Today, almost the entire logic of the cpu can be put on a single *microprocessor chip* about the size of a postage stamp. The microprocessor chosen for the TRS-80 was the Z-80, originally designed by Zilog, Inc. The Z-80 is a state-of-the-art (an engineering way of saying "modern") microprocessor with a good instruction set. Since the cpu portion of a microcomputer is now essentially its microprocessor we'll look in detail at the Z-80 architecture in this chapter, and at its instruction set in later chapters.

Memory within the TRS-80 system is made up of ROM, RAM, and *dedicated* memory addresses. We're all familiar with RAM memory. That's the memory that holds our programs and data, whether they are BASIC programs or SYSTEM types (assembly language). The minimum amount of RAM we can have is 4K, or 4096 bytes, and the maximum amount we can have is 48K, or 49152 bytes, for a system with an expansion interface. The term RAM stands for *R*andom-*A*ccess-*M*emory and simply means a memory that we can both read from and write into. ROM memory, on the other hand, is *R*ead-*O*nly *M*emory. ROM in the TRS-80 holds the Level I or Level II BASIC interpreter, and occupies 12288 bytes in the Level II case. Try as we might, we can't POKE into the ROM memory area. Each of the 61,440 locations of ROM and RAM can hold one byte, or 8 bits, of data. Each of these 61,440 locations is assigned a location number. ROM is assigned locations 0 through 12287, and RAM is assigned locations 16384 through 65535.

Yes? A question from the back of the room? The gentleman asks what locations 12288 through 16383 are used for? (These TRS-80 owners—you can't put anything over on them . . .) Locations 12288 through 16383 are not used for memory addresses in the conventional sense. These are dedicated locations that the cpu uses to address such things as the line printer, floppy disc, real-time clock and video screen. It turns out that the video display is indeed a RAM memory, but the remaining devices are only decoded as memory locations. We'll explain further in later chapters. Figure 1-4 shows the *memory mapping* for the TRS-80.

It's important to know that data in memory can be either an instruction for the cpu or data, such as a character for display. I see the same wise guy has his hand up! The cpu *doesn't*

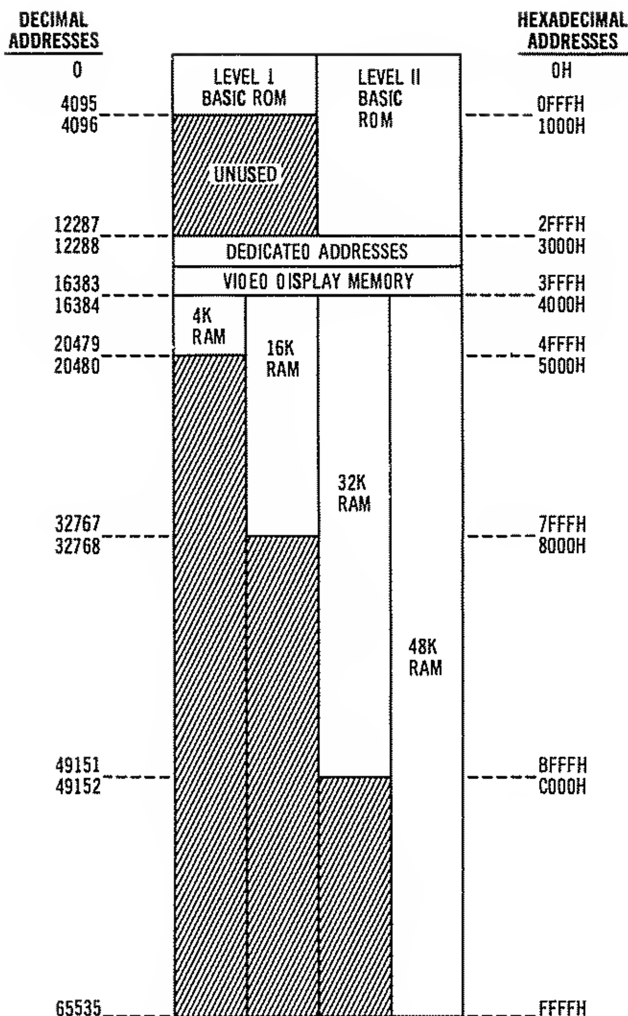


Fig. 1-4. TRS-80 memory mapping.

know which locations hold data and which hold instructions. The cpu blindly goes ahead and if a data byte is picked up instead of an instruction, it will attempt to execute the data as an instruction. The result will probably be catastrophic, and is a program *bug* (you're certainly familiar with bugs from your BASIC programs—in assembly language they are even more prolific). Data and programs are therefore intermixed in memory at the programmer's discretion (or indiscretion) and the program should know how to *jump* around the data.

I/O devices may be considered in two parts. Firstly, there is the physical I/O device, such as the cassette recorder, video display, keyboard, line printer, or floppy disc. Secondly, there is the *I/O device controller*. The I/O device controller performs an interfacing function between tbe cpu (microprocessor chip) and the I/O device. The controller matches the higb rate of data transfers from the cpu (hundreds of tbousands of bytes per second) to the I/O device (50 bytes per second for Level II tape cassette). The controller may also encode the data coming from the cpu into special format (video format for the display, for example) and provide a *handshake* function between the cpu and I/O device. (How are you, my name is Bernie. Do you bave the next data byte for me?) The I/O device itself may be a device adapted to microcomputer use such as the cassette recorder or video display or one specifically made for a microcomputer environment, sucb as the line printer or floppy disc.

The Z-80: A Chip Off the Old Block

Now that we have an overview of tbe TRS-80, let's look at the internal workings of the Z-80, or at least those parts that

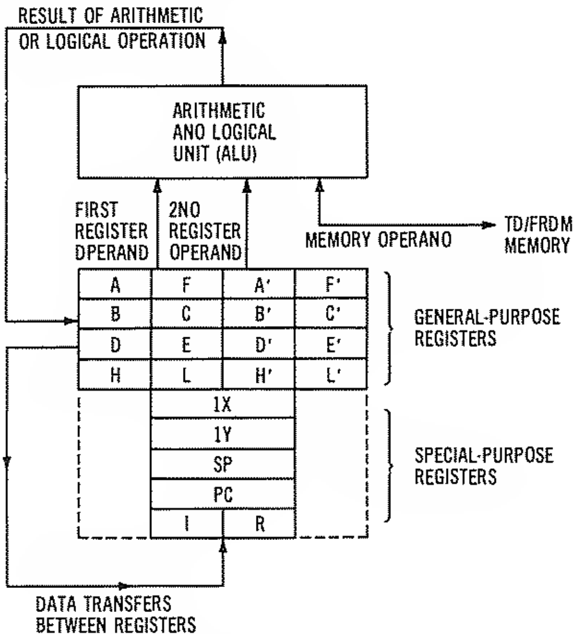


Fig. 1-5. Z-80 architecture.

we, as assembly language programmers, will want to be aware of. Figure 1-5 shows the cpu *register* arrangement, the ALU, or *a*rithmetic and *l*ogic *u*nit, and the data paths we should be concerned about.

In general, all data in the TRS-80 and most data within the Z-80 is handled in 8-bit, or one-byte segments. The Z-80 is called an "8-bit" microprocessor for this reason. The cpu (Z-80) registers are either 8 bits or 16 bits wide, and most manipulations within the cpu are done 8 bits at a time.

There are 14 general-purpose registers within the cpu, designated A, B, C, D, E, H, and L and the "primed" counterparts A′, B′, C′, D′, E′, H′, and L′. Many of the arithmetic and other instructions use the A register *contents* as one of the operands, with the other operand coming from memory or another register. For this reason, the "A" register can be thought of as the "accumulator" register, which is an old term that is still used today. In addition to being used separately as 8-bit registers, there are several sets of register "pairs" that form 16-bit registers when the 8-bit registers are used together. These are B/C, D/E, H/L, B′/C′, D′/′E, and H′/L′. The register pairs are used to perform limited 16-bit arithmetic, such as adding two 16-bit operands contained in two register pairs, or to specify a memory address.

At any time only one set of the registers, prime or non-prime, are active. Two Z-80 instructions select the current inactive set (prime) to become active and put the currently active (non-prime) into an inactive state. The instructions, therefore, are used to switch between the two sets as desired. A second set does not *have* to be used, but simply makes more register storage available if required.

The cpu registers are used to store temporary results, to hold data being transferred to memory or I/O, and in general to hold data that is being used for the current portion of the program that is being executed. Data changes within the cpu registers very rapidly as the program is being executed (tens of thousands of times per second) so the cpu registers may be thought of as a conveniently used, rapidly accessed, limited memory within the cpu itself that holds transient data.

In addition to the general-purpose registers within the cpu, there are special-purpose registers. The first of these is the PC, or *P*rogram *C*ounter. The PC is a 16-bit register that points to the current memory location holding the instruction to be executed. We mentioned previously that there were 65536 memory locations that could be used on the TRS-80. A 16-bit register may hold a range of values from 0000000000000000

through 1111111111111111, or decimal 0 through 65536 (hexadecimal 0000H through FFFFH). The PC can therefore *address* (point to) any memory location for the current instruction. Instructions to the cpu are *coded* into one, two, three, or four bytes and are generally arranged sequentially in memory, starting from "low" memory to "high" memory. Figure 1-6 shows a typical sequence of instructions. As each new instruction is "fetched" the PC is *updated* by adding the number of bytes in the instruction to the contents of the PC. The result points to the next instruction in sequence. When a "jump" is executed, the new memory location for the jump is forced into the PC, and replaces the previous value, so that the new instruction from a new segment of the program is accessed. If one could look at the PC in the TRS-80 as a program was running, the PC would be changing hundreds of thousands of times a second as sequences of instructions were executed and jumps were made to new sequences.

MEMORY LOCATION OF INSTRUCTION	CONTENTS	INSTRUCTION	PROGRAM COUNTER BEFORE EXECUTION
4A00H	06H	LD B,0	4A00H
4A01H	00H		
4A02H	B7H	OR A	4A02H
4A03H	EDH	SBC HL,DE	4A03H
4A04H	52H		
4A05H	FAH	JP M,OONE	4A05H
4A06H	0CH		
4A07H	4AH		
4A08H	04H	INC B	4A08H
4A09H	C3H	JP LOOP	4A09H
4A0AH	02H		
4A0BH	4AH		
4A0CH	19H	ADD HL,DE	4A0CH

Fig. 1-6. Typical sequence of instructions.

The SP, or *S*tack *P*ointer, is another 16-bit register that addresses memory (Figure 1-7). In this case, however, the SP addresses a memory *stack* area. The memory stack area is simply a portion of RAM used by the program as temporary storage of data and addresses of subroutines during subroutine calls. As the SP is 16 bits, any area of memory could conceivably be used, as long as it was RAM and not ROM. In practice, high areas of RAM memory are used, as the stack *builds down* from high memory to low memory. In a 16K RAM system, for example, the stack might start at 32767 (don't forget about that initial 16384 ROM and dedicated

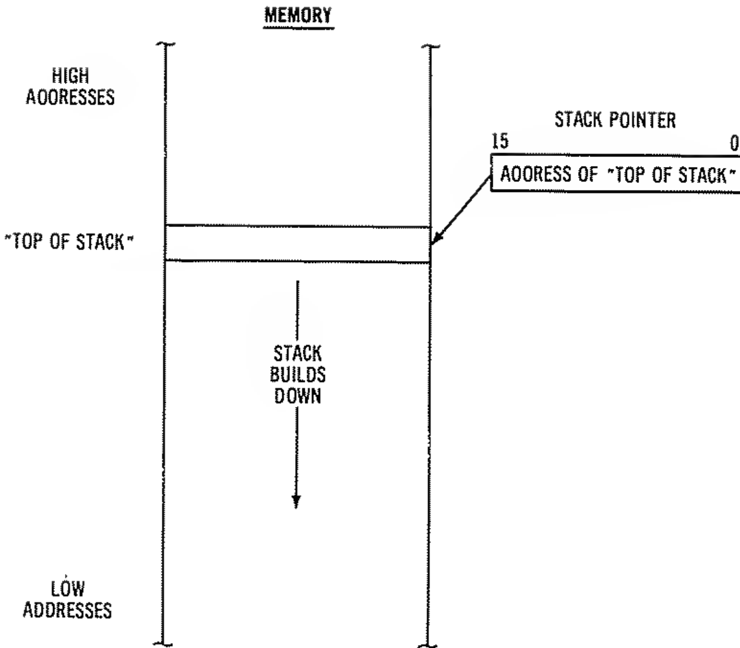


Fig. 1-7. Memory stack.

memory area) and huild downward. Well, it appears that the programmer in the back wants an explanation of the stack action. We'll give a brief one here and give a more detailed one in a later chapter. The stack is a *LIFO* stack, which stands for "last-in-first-out." A good analogy is a dinner plate stacker found at some restaurants. The last dinner plate put on the stack is the first taken off. As more and more plates are put on the stack, the stack increases in size. If the reader can visualize data being put on the stack in this fashion, it will he somewhat similar to Z-80 stack action.

Two additional cpu registers, IX and IY, are used to modify the address in an instruction. This permits *indexing* operations which allow rapid access of data in tables. Indexing operations and the use of IX and IY will he discussed in detail in Chapter 3.

The I and R registers are two registers that the reader prohably will not use in his TRS-80 system. The R register is continually used by TRS-80 *hardware* to *r*efresh the dynamic RAM memories used in the TRS-80 system. The 8-hit value in the R register is continually incremented by one to cycle the register from 0000000 through 1111111 and around

again to provide a *refresh count* for *dynamic memory refresh*, which restores the data in RAM. The 8-bit I register is used for a mode of interrupts not currently implemented in TRS-80 hardware.

There are other cpu registers, of course, but the foregoing registers are the only ones that are accessible by an assembly-language program. The other registers in the Z-80 cpu hold the instruction after it is fetched, buffer data as it is moved internally and transferred externally, and perform other actions required for instruction interpretation, instruction implementation, and system control.

The arithmetic and logic unit is the portion of the cpu that, as the name implies, performs the addition, subtraction, ANDing, ORing, exclusive ORing, and *shifting* of data from two operands. The result of these operations generally goes to a cpu register, although it may also go to memory in some cases. A set of *flags* are set on the results of the arithmetic or logical operation. For example, it is convenient to know when the result is zero after a subtract operation. A *zero flag* is set if this is the case. There are eight flag bits that are treated together as a cpu register, even though they are not used in the same fashion. The flag registers are called F and F′. When used in register pair operations the A and F or A′ and F′ registers would be grouped together. The flags will be further discussed in this section and in chapters dealing with specific sets of instructions. For the time being Table 1-1 shows the names and functions of the flags.

Table 1-1. CPU Flags

Name	Function
Sign(S)	Holds the sign of the result. 0 if positive, 1 if negative
Zero(Z)	Holds the zero status of the result 1 if zero, 0 if non-zero
Half-carry(H)	Holds the half-carry status of the result, 0 if no half-carry, 1 if half-carry. Not generally accessible by program.
Parity/Overflow (P/V)	Holds the parity of the result or the overflow condition. If used as parity, P = 0 if the number of one bits in the result is odd, or P = 1 if the number is even. If used as overflow flag, V = 0 if no overflow or V = 1 if overflow.
Add/subtract(N)	Add or subtract condition for decimal instructions. Add = 0, subtract = 1. Not generally accessible by program.
Carry(C)	Holds the carry status of the result, 0 if no carry, 1 if carry

Data flow between the cpu and remaining TRS-80 system is shown in Figure 1-5. Almost all data within the system uses the cpu. As a program is being executed, the instruction bytes making up the program are continually being fetched from RAM memory and placed into the cpu instruction decoding logic. If an instruction is four bytes long, four separate memory fetches are made to RAM memory, with the PC pointing to each sequential byte in turn. Once the instruction is decoded, additional memory accesses may have to be made to get the operand to be used in the instruction. The instruction to add the contents of the A register and location 16400 (4010H) calls for the cpu to not only fetch the instruction, but to fetch the value found at location 16400 to be added to the value found in the A register. Similarly, the results of operations may be *stored* back into memory. In addition to transferring instruction bytes and operand data between itself and memory, the cpu also communicates with I/O devices such as the line printer and cassette. The cassette in Level II BASIC operates at 50 bytes per second. Each byte on a write (CSAVE) is held in a cpu register and written to the cassette interface logic one *bit* at a time. When a print operation on the system line printer is done (LPRINT), a byte of *status* from the line printer is read into a cpu register and checked. If the status indicates the line printer is *ready* to receive the next byte, the byte representing character data is transferred from a cpu register to the line printer. Note that in both the cassette and line printer cases the data may have been initially contained in a *buffer* in memory as a cassette program or print line, but that it is transferred from memory to the cpu register and from the cpu register to the I/O device a byte at a time. Although it is possible to bypass the cpu and transfer data between the I/O device and memory using a Z-80 technique called *d*irect-*m*emory-*a*ccess, or *DMA*, the TRS-80 does not currently use this method and we will not be describing it in this text.

In this chapter we've looked at the architecture of the TRS-80 and especially at the internal architecture of the Z-80 microprocessor used in the TRS-80. In the next two chapters we'll investigate two more topics closely associated with the Z-80, the Z-80 instruction set, and Z-80 addressing modes. After that we'll call a halt to theoretical discussions and get our hands dirty (figuratively, anyway, unless you code with a leaky pen) in learning how to use the assembler, editor, and T-BUG.

CHAPTER 2

Z-80 Instructions

In this chapter we will discuss the instruction set of the TRS-80 system. The instruction set of the TRS-80 at the assembly-language level is really the instruction set of the Z-80 microprocessor in the TRS-80 as we pointed out in the last chapter. If you have looked at the numeric list of the instruction set in the Radio Shack Editor/Assembler Manual (26-2002), you may have been one of the recent wave of trauma victims that have suddenly appeared all over the country. There are *many* different combinations of instructions! (There are well over five hundred, as a matter of fact!) This chapter, among other things, will attempt to prove that this massive, confusing list can be reduced to a tolerable number of basic instructions. It will take some effort to learn about the various instruction types, and a little more effort to learn about the addressing modes covered in the next chapter, but refuse to be intimidated! There are hundreds of thousands of assembly-language programmers in the country and there is no reason you cannot be another.

The Z-80 Family Tree

One of the things that we might mention in passing concerns the heritage of the Z-80 microprocessor. At many places in the discussion of the instruction set in this book, the reader may be prompted to say, "Why the devil did they do that?"

One of the reasons that there are many different ways of doing the same thing (say adding two operands) is related to the predecessor of the Z-80, the 8080A, and its predecessor, the 8008. Tbe 8008 is the grandfather of the Z-80. The 8008 grew up in the early days of microcomputing, back in the early '70s (this century). The 8008 was the first microprocessor on a chip and had an instruction set of 58 instructions. Shortly after the 8008 was introduced, another microprocessor, the 8080, was developed. The 8080 was a faster, more powerful microprocessor than the 8008, and had an instruction set of 78 instructions. Recently, a third generation of microprocessor was developed—the Z-80. To compete in the hectic microprocessor marketplace, the 8080 included the 8008 in-

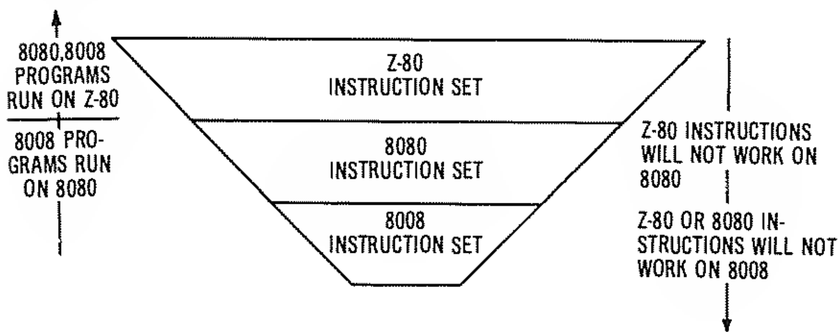


Fig. 2-1. The Z-80 family tree.

structions in its *repertoire*, and the Z-80 includes the 8080 instructions in *its* repertoire. The reason for this *downwards compatibility* is that existing programs can be executed on the newer generations of microprocessors, saving costs on software development. The situation for the instruction set of the Z-80 is shown in Figure 2-1. All programs written for both the 8008 and 8080 can be executed on the Z-80, assuming, of course, that the limitations of the system are equal (such as the same I/O device addresses, memory layout, and so forth).

In carrying through the instruction set of the 8008 and 8080, the Z-80 instruction set duplicates the architecture and general approach of its two predecessors, but adds many new instructions of its own. If the reader sees many ways of doing the same thing in future chapters, therefore, it is probably

related to the father's approach, or even the grandfather's. Which approach is best, the experience of age, or the innovation of youth? As in life, some of each.

How Long Is an Instruction?

The answer to this, of course, is "long enough to reach the memory." Z-80 instructions are, in fact, one to four bytes long with the average being about two bytes. This means that in 4096 bytes of memory we can hold about 2000 assembly-language instructions. This is quite a contrast to BASIC programs where each BASIC line probably takes up 40 characters or so, allowing perhaps 100 BASIC lines. (Each assembly-language instruction, of course, does much less than a BASIC instruction, but does it much faster.) Many of the older 8080-type instructions are one byte long, while the newer Z-80 type instructions are four bytes long. The assembler program automatically calculates the length of the instruction during the assembly process, so you do not need to be concerned with remembering instruction lengths.

```
4A00           00100      ORG   4A00H       ;START AT LOCATION 4A00H
4A00 3E31      00110      LD    A,31H       ;LOAD A REGISTER WITH "1"
4A02 32203E    00120      LD    (3E20H),A   ;STORE "1" INTO CENTER
4A05 C3054A    00130 LOOP JP    LOOP        ;LOOP HERE
4A00           00140      END   4A00H       ;END-START OF 4A00H
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP    4A05
```

Fig. 2-2. Typical assembly-language listing.

To give the reader some feel for instruction lengths in a typical program we will look at a typical assembly-language *listing*, shown in Figure 2-2. The listing is the output display or printed output of the assembler portion of the Editor/Assembler after the assembly process.

The first column of the listing represents the location in RAM where the program is *to be* stored. The value "4A00," for example, indicates that the "LD A,31H" instruction will be put into memory locations 4A00H (18944 decimal) and 4A01H (it is a two-byte instruction). The next column is the machine-language code of the instruction itself. For the "LD

A,31H" this amounts to two bytes (16 bits or four hexadecimal digits). The "3E31" are the four hexadecimal digits representing the code. The next column is a line number for the assembly, which is identical to the BASIC line numbers with which you are familiar. The remaining columns represent the assembly-language line for the instruction code; the first column is a *label*, the next is the *operation code* (a shorthand representation of the instruction), the third is an *operand* (in this case 31H (49 decimal). This format will be discussed in detail in Chapter 4, so do not concern yourself with it at this point. *Do* note the second column, however, and observe how the instruction lengths vary from one to four bytes; each two hexadecimal digits are one byte.

Wait a Microsecond . . .

Another interesting attribute that we should discuss is instruction speed. Generally, the longer the instruction, the longer it takes. The reason for this is that for each byte of the instruction one *memory access* must be made. This amounts to the cpu transferring one byte of instruction data into an internal register for decoding. To make one memory access in the TRS-80 takes about .45 microsecond, or about ½ millionth of a second. Add to this time some additional overhead for executing the instruction and for obtaining operands from memory, and we find that TRS-80 instructions range from 2.3 microseconds to 13 microseconds, with the average being somewhere around 5 microseconds. To contrast assembly-language code with BASIC coding, consider this BASIC program

```
100 FOR I = 0  TO 255
200 NEXT I
```

The short loop above takes approximately ⅔ second to execute in BASIC. A corresponding assembly-language program

```
100 LOOP DEC  C       ;DECREMENT COUNT
200      JP   Z,LOOP  ;JUMP IF NOT ZERO
```

would take about 2 milliseconds, or two thousandths of a second, approximately 350 times as fast!

The extremely fast speed of assembly-language programs (when compared to higher-level languages such as BASIC) makes this type of programming excellent for such applications as *real-time* game simulations, fast business sorts, or

any task that might take prohibitive amounts of time with other methods.

Instruction Groups

Now that we've discussed some of the attributes of instructions, let's look at how we might whittle down that set of Z-80 instructions from sawmill size into at least a cord of wood. We'll do this by dividing the instruction set into six different groups:

Data Movement
Arithmetic, Logical, and Compare
Decision Making and Jumps
Stack Operations
Shifting and Bit Operations
I/O Operations

Data Movement: Loads, Stores, and Transfers

Much of the time in any program, whether it is BASIC or assembly language, is spent moving data from one place to another. In assembly-language programs the cpu registers are used for very temporary storage while RAM memory is used for data that may be somewhat less volatile. If one looks at the TRS-80 system components of cpu, memory, and I/O devices, one can say that data in the cpu is transient, data in memory is active for program usage, and data stored on audio cassette tape or floppy disc is most permanent. In any event, data is constantly being moved from cpu registers to other cpu registers, from cpu registers to memory, from memory to cpu registers, and from one memory area to another memory area.

The general term for moving data from memory to a cpu register is "load." Data is said to be *loaded* into a cpu register. Remember, now, that the data we are talking about is *operand* data rather than the data associated with the instruction operation itself. The data associated with the instruction itself is automatically brought into the cpu instruction decoding logic in the course of normal program execution as the PC (program counter) points to each instruction in turn. An example of this difference would be the instruction "LD B,101" which loads the value of 101 decimal into the cpu B register.

In many other microprocessors, the action of transferring data from a cpu register to memory is called a "store." In the

Z-80 microprocessor of the TRS-80, however, the term *load* is used to apply not only to transferring data from memory to a cpu register, but also in transferring data from a cpu register to memory. The instruction *mnemonic*, or shorthand symbol, for a load operation is "LD." Any time you see an "LD" on an assembly listing you know that data is being moved between cpu registers or between cpu registers and memory. The instruction

```
LD   A,B      ;LOAD A WITH B
```

for example, takes the contents of cpu register B and puts it into cpu register A, leaving the B register *unchanged*. This last point is an important one: All loads *copy* data, rather than transferring it. The *source* of the data remains unchanged, whether it is in memory or a cpu register.

Another example of a load is the instruction

```
LD (4234H),A      ;STORE A REGISTER INTO LOC 4234H
```

which takes the contents of the cpu A register and copies it into RAM memory location 4234H (16948 decimal).

We mentioned in Chapter 1 that the general-purpose cpu registers were 8 bits wide, but that sometimes they were grouped as *register pairs* of 16 bits. To refresh your memory (no pun intended), the register pairs were combinations of cpu registers B and C, D and E, and H and L. Tbe load instructions give us the ability to move data one byte or two bytes at a time using single registers or register pairs.

When data is moved one byte at a time, the eight bits of the *source operand* are copied into the *destination* register or memory location. Of course the bits are copied with the same orientation. *LoaDing* the H register with 01100001 from the L register produces 01100001 in the H register, and not another arrangement of bits.

When data is moved two bytes at a time, the 16 bits are copied from one register pair to another, or between a register pair and *two* memory locations. Let's see how this works. Suppose that in register pair H,L we have the decimal value 1000. Now if we convert decimal 1000 into binary we have

BIT 7	BIT 6	BIT 5	BIT 4	BIT 3	BIT 2	BIT 1	BIT 0	
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	H (MOST SIGNIFICANT)
1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	L (LEAST SIGNIFICANT)

Fig. 2-3. Register pair data arrangements.

0000 0011 1110 1000, after we have added the necessary leading zeros to make up 16 bits. Figure 2-3 shows how that value is arranged in the H and L registers. The upper 8 bits (one byte) is in H and the lower 8 bits is in L. The same arrangement holds true for B and C and D and E. B and D are always the upper, or *most significant*, registers, while C and E are always the lower or *least significant* registers.

That's easy enough to remember if you think of BC, DE, and HL and remember H(igh) and L(ow). And to answer that same heckler from the back of the room, yes, this was the reason for the 8008 designation of "H" and "L." But what happens in memory when a register pair is stored? When a register pair such as H and L are stored by the instruction

```
LD   (4A0AH),HL   ;STORE H AND L INTO 18954
```

the low or least significant register, in this case L, is stored in the memory location specified, in this case 4A0AH. The high, or most significant register, in this case H, is stored in the *next* memory location, in this case 4A0BH (18955). *This arrangement of low order byte followed by high order byte holds true for all types of data within a Z-80 assembly-language program.* As one would expect, data loaded from memory into a cpu register pair restores the register pair in the same fashion. Figure 2-4 shows the store described above.

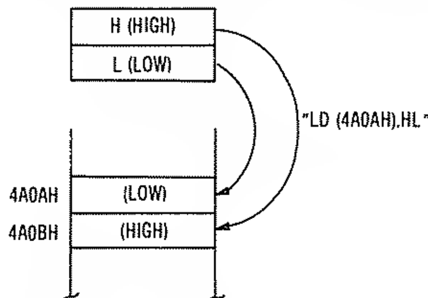


Fig. 2-4. Memory arrangement for 16-bit data.

A group of load instructions called the *block moves* enables from one to 65536 bytes to be moved in a single instruction, or in a very few instructions. These load instructions avoid the overhead of moving data in a long sequence of instructions and are a powerful feature of the Z-80. The four block moves will be discussed in detail in Chapter 6.

We won't attempt to list all of the possible loads in this section. Many of them are dependent upon the *addressing*

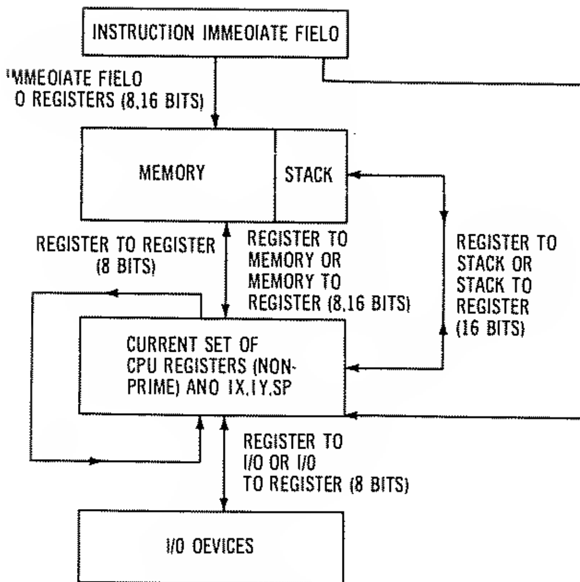


Fig. 2-5. Data transfer paths.

mode used in the instruction, which will be covered in Chapter 3. What we will do, however, is to illustrate the ways in which 8- or 16-bit data can be transferred from one part of the system to another by the use of LD instructions. Figure 2-5 shows the paths and indicates the types of instructions available in the Z-80 to perform the transfers.

Arithmetic, Logical, and Compare

The worst part in understanding this group is the pronunciation of "arithmetic." Contrary to what you learned in P.S. 49, the adjective is pronounced so that the last two syllables rhyme with the last two of "charismatic." Novice programmers have been dismissed on the spot for the use of the common pronunciation! This group includes instructions that add and subtract two operands, instructions that perform logical operations of ANDing, ORing, and exclusive ORing, and compare instructions, which are essentially subtracts.

The most common type of arithmetic is the simple ADD instruction. Suppose that we have two 8-bit operands (two one-byte operands) in cpu registers A and B, as shown in Figure 2-6. When the instruction

```
ADD   A,B      ;ADD REGISTER B TO REGISTER A
```

is executed in the program, the contents of register B (the *source* register) will be added to the contents of register A (the destination register) and the result will be put into the A register with the B register unchanged. All *8-bit* arithmetic and logical instructions operate in the same fashion; the result always goes to the A register, and one of the operands must have originally been in tbe A register. The instruction

```
SUB   (HL)     ;SUBTRACT LOCATION 4400H(HL) FROM A
```

takes the contents of location 4400H, subtracts it from the contents of the A register, and puts the result into the A register, leaving the contents of location 4400H uncbanged.

When an arithmetic instruction such as an add or subtract is executed, the *flags* are set on the results of the instruction. If the result of the subtract were zero, for example, the "Z" flag would be set to a 1; if the result were non-zero, the Z flag would contain a 0. A decision could then be made by a jump-type instruction later in tbe program that would test the state of the zero and other flags. The flags will be furtber discussed in the appropriate material for the instruction group. Except for the two special adds and subtracts that add in the *carry* flag, tbat's about all there is to the 8-bit arithmetic group. As with the loads, there are many varieties of addressing modes that may be used, and these are discussed in the next chapter.

The logical instructions in this group work in similar fashion to the arithmetic instructions. An 8-bit operand from

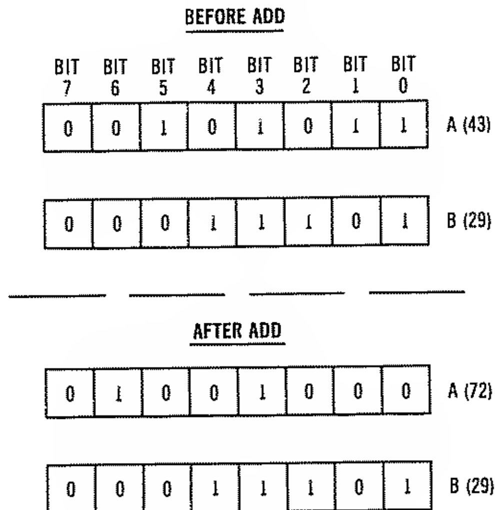
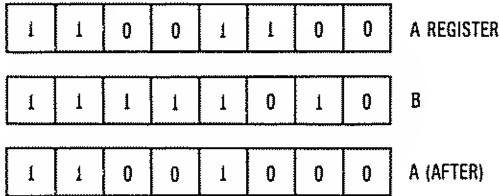


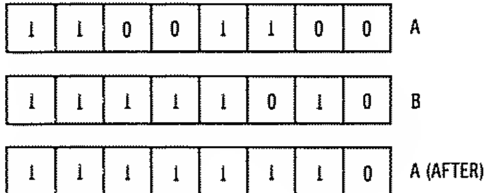
Fig. 2-6. Sample ADD operation.

memory or another register is used in conjunction with the contents of the A register. The result is put into the A register and appropriate flags are set. The functions that may be performed are ANDing, ORing, and exclusive ORing. You may be familiar witb these functions from BASIC. When two bits are ANDed, the result bit is a one only if both operand bits are a one. When two bits are ORed, the result is a one if either bit or both bits are ones. When two bits are exclusive ORed, the result bit is a one if and only if one or the other bit is a one, but not both. For 8-bit operands, each *bit position* is considered one at a time, as shown in Figure 2-7. Here again there are many addressing modes possible.

AND OPERATION



OR OPERATION



EXCLUSIVE OR OPERATION

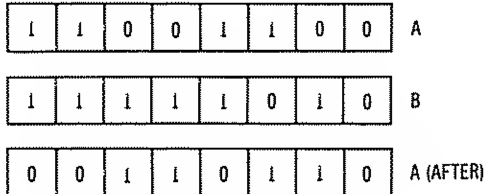


Fig. 2-7. Logical operations.

Compare instructions are very similar to subtracts. An operand from memory or another cpu register is subtracted from the contents of the A register. The flags are set as in the subtract. The result, however, does not go to the A register, but is discarded. A compare allows testing of an operand by

setting the flags without destroying the contents of the A register, a useful instruction. There is only one compare, the "CP" instruction, which again has several addressing modes.

In addition to the single compare instruction, there is a *block compare* set of instructions that allows an 8-bit compare of one operand to a specified block of memory locations. This is one of the most powerful features of the Z-80, as it is much faster than a software routine that does the same thing, as would have to be implemented in the 8080A. There are four block compare instructions and these will be discussed in detail in Chapter 6.

The instructions in the above discussion were 8-bit instructions; that is, they operated with two 8-bit operands. The A register was used in these instructions as an *accumulator* to hold the results of the operation. The Z-80 also allows a 16-bit add or subtract operation that uses the HL register pair in much the same way as the A register is used in 8-bit operations. In these adds and subtracts, a 16-bit operand from another register pair is added or subtracted from the contents of HL, with the result going to HL. The flags are set on the result of the add or subtract. The Z-80 also allows index register IX or IY (two 16-bit registers) to be used as the destination register in place of HL.

The remaining instructions in this group are the *increments* (INC) and decrements (DEC). These instructions are useful for adding one or subtracting one from the contents of a cpu register, a cpu register pair, or a memory location. Almost all assembly-language programs are continually incrementing or decrementing a count used as a loop control, index, or similar variable, and the INCs and DECs are more efficient than adding one or subtracting one by an ADD or SUB. Either single cpu registers, register pairs, or memory locations (8 bits) may be altered by these instructions.

Figure 2-8 illustrates the actions of the arithmetic, logical, and compare instructions and shows which cpu registers are used for operands and what types of instructions are available.

Decision Making and Jumps

There are only two ways to alter the path of execution of a program from BASIC, unconditionally or conditional upon some result, such as a variable being greater than a specified value. The Z-80 instructions "JP" and "JR" differ only in addressing mode and cause an unconditional jump to a specified location, exactly identical in concept to a BASIC GOTO.

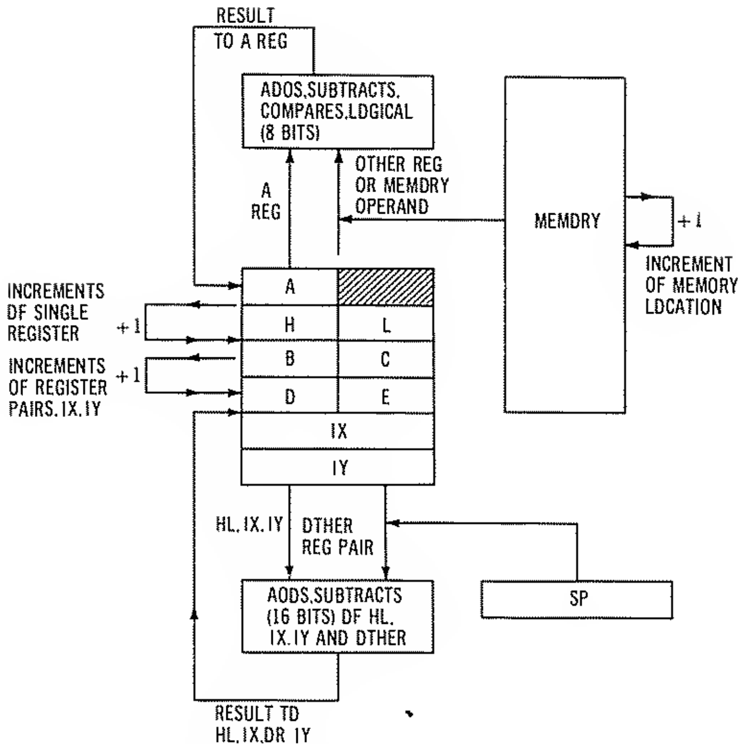


Fig. 2-8. Arithmetic, logical, and compare action.

Of course, in assembly-language jumps, a memory location is specified, rather than a line number. The instruction below will jump to Level I or II ROM

```
JP   066DH      ;JUMP TO ATTENTION
```

A similar type of jump can be made conditional upon the settings of the cpu *flags*. The flags, in turn, hold the conditions of an add, subtract, shift, or other previously executed instructions. These conditions are the conditions described in Chapter 1—zero (or non-zero) result, positive or negative result, two types of carry, parity (essentially a count of the number of "one" bits in the result), and overflow. The conditional jumps are the only way the program has of testing the results of an arithmetic or other operation, except for the conditional calls, which are very similar. Let's see how they work:

```
CP   100      ;COMPARE A REGISTER TO 100
JP   Z,42AAH  ;JUMP TO 17066 IF A = 100
```

The two instructions above cause the assemhly-language program to jump to location 17066 (42AAH) if the contents of the A register are equal to 100. The CP (compare) instruction subtracts 100 from the contents of the A register. The zero flag is set if the result is zero, that is, if the A register holds 100 before the compare. If the A register does not contain 100, a value other than zero will result and the zero flag will not be set. The jump to 42AAH is made, therefore, only if the A register contained 100.

The Z-80 instruction set also has a number of instructions that are equivalent to BASIC GOSUBs. These are the CALL instructions. CALLs are used to conditionally go to a subroutine on the settings of the same flags used by jumps, or to unconditionally transfer control to a subroutine. When the transfer is made, the cpu remembers where the return point is in similar fashion to saving the next BASIC line number. The following instructions CALL a subroutine to calculate the number of TRS-80 systems (why not?) and to return at location 4801H

```
(47FE)  CALL  4C00H      ;CALCULATE NUMBER OF SYSTEMS
(4801)  ADD   2          ;ADD IN MINE AND URSULA'S
```

Note that in the above code the first instruction was located at location 47FEH, and that the next was located at 47FEH plus the length of the CALL (3 bytes), or 4801H (we'll get the reader used to hexadecimal yet!). While there are a few special jump instructions not mentioned, 99% of all jump and CALLS will be similar to those shown above.

Of course, as in BASIC, every CALL must have a RETurn. The Z-80 has two types of returns (that's correct!) conditional and unconditional. The unconditional RET always returns to the location following the CALL, while the conditional RET returns conditionally upon the flag settings. And that's about all there is to jumps, CALLs, and returns!

Stack Operations

The stack area of memory was mentioned in the first chapter. Recall that the stack area was used to store data and addresses on a temporary hasis. The first use of the stack by Z-80 instructions has already heen mentioned; CALLs automatically save the return address in the stack as the call is implemented. Let's look again at the last example, the CALL to location 4C00H instruction which was located at RAM memory location 47FE. When the CALL is made the PC (pro-

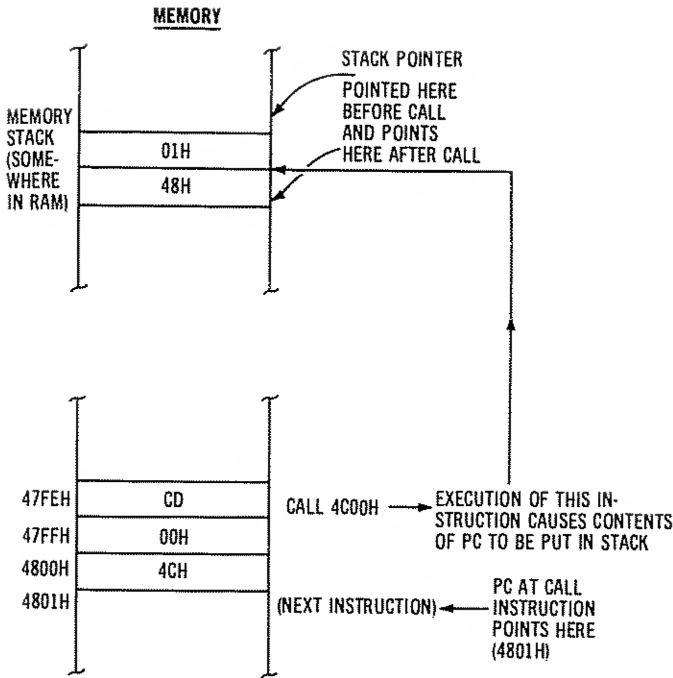


Fig. 2-9. CALL stack action.

gram counter) points to location 4801H, the next instruction (the PC is updated before the instruction is executed). As the CALL is implemented, the contents of the PC is pushed into the stack as shown in Figure 2-9. Each time the stack is used, of course, the SP (stack pointer) register is *decremented* to point to the next location to he used, or the *top of stack*. Why is the next location called the *top* of stack, when it looks like the *bottom* of stack? It's all in how one looks at it. The reader may optionally turn the hook upside down to get a better picture of this action. When the RETurn associated with the CALL is executed later in the program, the return address is retrieved from the stack and put into the PC to effectively cause a jump to the return address as shown in the figure.

CALLs and RETs cause automatic stack action. The programmer may, however, temporarily store data in the stack hy executing a *PUSH* instruction. PUSHes store a register pair into the stack area as shown in Figure 2-10. The data may be restored into the same or different register pair by a *POP* instruction. Of course the data comes off the stack when

a POP is executed in the same fashion it went in by the PUSH, with the most significant byte going to the high-order register (H, B, D, or the high-order portion of IX or IY) and the low-order byte going to the low-order register (L, C, E, or the low-order portion of IX or IY). The following two instructions PUSH the contents of register pair BC onto the stack, and then POP the data into register pair HL. This is a way of transferring data between BC and HL, as there is no other instruction that is able to perform this action.

```
PUSH   BC     ;CONTENTS OF BC TO STACK
POP    HL     ;HL NOW HAS CONTENTS OF BC
```

In addition to use of the stack by CALLs, RETs, PUSHes, and POPs, certain other instructions associated with interrupts and the interrupts themselves cause use of the stack. We will not be illustrating the use of interrupts in any detail, since they go beyond the scope of most assembly-language applications.

Shifting and Bit Operations

In the instructions discussed so far, we've covered a lot of ground. In fact, any computer program we want could be

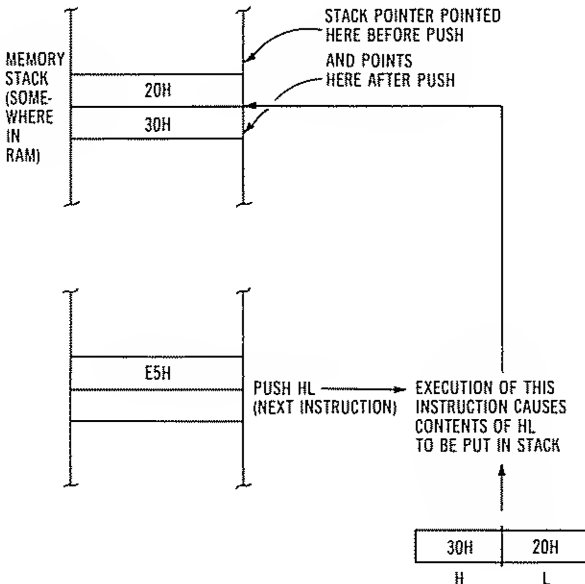


Fig. 2-10. PUSH stack action.

written in just those instructions (in fact, any computer program *could* be implemented in an eight or ten instruction machine, if it were carefully designed!). The instructions in this group, however, are niceties that make handling of *bits* and fields somewhat easier.

The shift instructions allow a single register to be *shifted* right or left. The shifting action can be visualized as pushing in another bit at the right or left end of a cpu register. As the cpu register can only hold 8 bits, a bit is "pushed out" from the other end of the register. When a zero is pushed into the end and the bit that is pushed out is discarded, the shift is said to be a "logical" shift. When the bit pushed out is carried around and pushed into the register from the other end, the shift is said to be a "circular" shift or a "rotate." The Z-80 has both logical shifts and rotates and also has a type called an "arithmetic" shift used for working with *signed numbers*. All of the shifts can he used with the A register, and some can be used with other cpu registers and with memory locations. Figure 2-11 shows some common shifts in the Z-80.

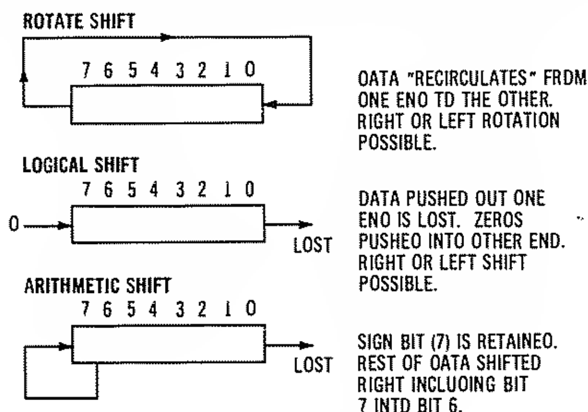


Fig. 2-11. Shifts in the Z-80.

Shifts may be used for a variety of reasons in computer programs including alignment of *fields* (subdivisions within hytes), multiplication and division, testing of individual hits, and computation of addresses. We'll say more about shifts in Chapter 8.

Bit operations allow any hit within a cpu register or memory location to he tested, set to a one, or set to a zero. As there are eight different *bit positions* that can be involved, many cpu registers, and many different ways of addressing

memory, it's easy to see why there are so many different *bit* instructions listed in the list of all Z-80 instructions. However, as with a lot of the instructions, they all resolve down to only three types, *BIT*, *SET*, and *RES*, which perform the test, set, and reset functions. These three are also covered in Chapter 8.

I/O Operations

The last group of instructions we'll discuss here are the I/O instructions. There are really only two in the Z-80, IN and OUT. All the IN does is to transfer one byte of data into a cpu register from an external device, such as cassette tape. The OUT *outputs* one byte of data from a cpu register to an external device. Although the original register used for these was the A register, the Z-80 added the use of other cpu registers as the source (OUT) or destination (IN) for the input/output operation. Another powerful feature the Z-80 added to the basic 8080A instruction set was the ability to perform a *block input/output* where the Z-80 will automatically transfer a block of data into an input area or output a block of data from an output area. The input "areas" in this type of operation are called *I/O buffers* or simply "buffers." More about input/output operations in Chapter 10.

A Program of a Thousand Locations Begins With the First Bit

The above homily was found inscribed on the first real digital computer, Babbage's Folly of a hundred years ago. It still holds true today. None of the instructions discussed here is *that* sophisticated; most are very easy to comprehend. If you will believe that and the idea that there are many ways to write a program that will do a specific task, you are prepared to advance into the ranks of assembly-language programmers. In the next chapter we will look at the last tedious description of the Z-80 instructions, their addressing modes. We will then be in a position to "lay down some code" and vindicate Babbage.

CHAPTER 3

Z-80 Addressing

The last chapter covered the types of instructions that are available in the Z-80 of the TRS-80. We warned the reader not to be intimidated by the many different instructions as they could really be grouped into a much smaller number. In this chapter we will talk about another factor that makes life interesting for Z-80 programmers— the wide variety of *addressing modes* that are available in the Z-80. Many instructions have several types of addressing modes, and the choice must be made of which one to use to do a certain task. Here again the reader shouldn't be frightened by the addressing modes available, as they are all readily understood.

Why Not One Addressing Mode?

If all instructions performed different functions, but worked with operands from the same place and operands of the same number, we could, in fact, have one addressing mode. However, we know from the last chapter that this is not true. We can add two operands from two cpu registers or one operand from a cpu register and one from memory. We can add two register pairs. Obviously the ADD instructions for these cases must be different, as they specify different locations for the operands. There are a few other instructions that we did not mention in Chapter 2 that require *no* operands. One example is SCF, which sets the carry flag. It would be foolhardy (or at

least ill advised) to attempt to make the instruction format for this type of instruction the same as the instruction format for an ADD.

To further complicate the addressing situation, we must consider the grandfather and father of the Z-80, the 8008 and 8080A, and their addressing modes. The 8008 had a very limited addressing capability. To address an operand in memory, the HL register pair had to be loaded with the 16-bit value representing the operand's location. If a load of the A register from memory location 20AAH (8362) was to be performed, the HL register pair was first loaded with 20AAH, and then a "LD (HL)" instruction was executed to perform the load. The HL register pair was used in this fashion as a *register pointer* to memory for most instructions involving an operand in memory. The 8080A, however, improved upon this type of addressing by allowing *direct addressing* of memory for certain instructions. With the 8080A, the instruction "LD A,(20AAH)" could be executed to directly load the A register with the contents of location 20AAH, without having to first point to that location with the HL register. Of course the 8080A retained the earlier addressing mode of the 8008. The Z-80 further expanded upon the 8008 and 8080A addressing capability by adding *indexed addressing* and other addressing modes, which permitted such operations as "LD A,(IX+123)" where index register IX points to the start of a table at 20AAH, and the "+123" refers to the 124th entry in the table.

"And that, Jimmy, is why we have the various addressing modes in the Z-80 today." "Gee, Mr. Computer Science, could we look at the Z-80 addressing modes in more detail now?" I thought he'd never ask . . .

Implied Addressing: No Addressing at All

The first of the addressing modes is *implied addressing*. This mode is used for simple instructions that require no operands, such as the SCF instruction which sets the carry flag. Other instructions of this type are *CCF*, *C*omplement *C*arry *F*lag, *DI*, *D*isable *I*nterrupts, *EI*, *E*nable *I*nterrupts, *HALT*, Halt CPU, and *NOP*, *N*o *O*peration, to name a few more. Because these specify a simple action and no operand, they can generally be held in an instruction of one byte, as is shown in Figure 3-1. Every time the cpu encounters the SCF instruction it will set the carry flag in the cpu and fetch no more bytes; the cpu knows the SCF instruction is only one byte long, as it knows the lengths of all other instructions.

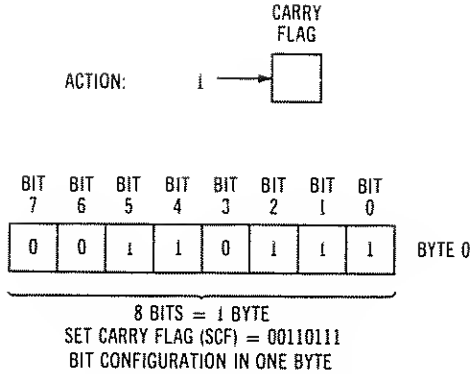


Fig. 3-1. Implied addressing.

Immediate Addressing

In immediate addressing the operand is contained within the instruction itself, rather than in a memory location. This type of addressing is used to load or perform arithmetic or logical operations with *constants*. Suppose we want to add 23 to the contents of the A register. One way to do this would be to have the value of 23 in a memory location and then perform the ADD as in

```
LD   B,A        ;MOVE A TO B
LO   A,(2111H)  ;2111H (8465) CONTAINS 23
AOD  A,B        ;AOD A REG ANO B REG
```

If we had to use many constants throughout the program, however, the program would be *filled* with locations that held constants of various values, and we'd have to recall where each one was located.

Immediate addressing gets around this problem by allowing an instruction such as

```
ADD   A,23     ;ADD 23 TO THE A REGISTER
```

The actual appearance of the "ADD A,23" is shown in Figure 3-2. The first byte of the instruction is the *operation code* of the instruction, the code that tells the cpu what the instruction is and how long it is (the implied type of instructions really had a one-byte operation code). "Operation Code" has been shortened to *"opcode"* (those long cafeteria lunches again). In general, the *first* byte of an instruction in the Z-80 is the opcode, but some instructions have *two* bytes as opcodes. The second byte of the "ADD A,23" is the *immediate data* value of 23 decimal or 17H. The data value is *in the instruction it-*

self, ratber than in another memory location located far away from tbe instruction.

Both 8-hit and 16-bit (one and two byte) immediate instructions are available in tbe Z-80. The one hyte immediate instructions load a register or allow arithmetic or logical operations on the A register. Some samples are

```
LD    H,100    ;LOAD H REG WITH 100
LD    A,0FBH   ;LOAD A REG WITH -5
ADD   A,50H    ;ADD 50H (80) TO A REGISTER
AND   A,7      ;AND LOWER THREE BITS
```

The two hyte immediate instructions in the Z-80 are used to load register pairs with constants. The instruction

```
LD  BC,3000  ;LOAD BC WITH 3000
```

loads register pair BC with a constant value of 3000 decimal. As two hytes are involved in the data, the immediate data value in the instruction is contained in bytes 2 and 3 of the instruction, as shown in Figure 3-3. Byte one is the opcode for a "LD BC" type instruction. Note that the hexadecimal representation of 3000, 0BB8H, is reordered least significant byte first in the instruction. As we mentioned earlier, all 16-bit data is handled in this manner in the Z-80. *If you are doing assembly-language programming, you will never have to*

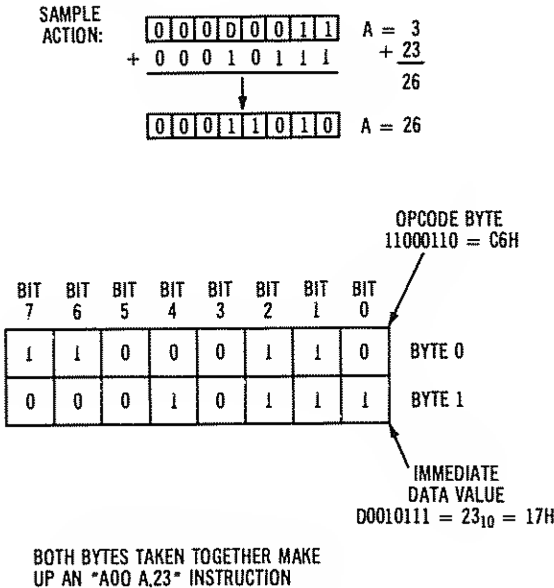


Fig. 3-2. Immediate addressing, 8 bits.

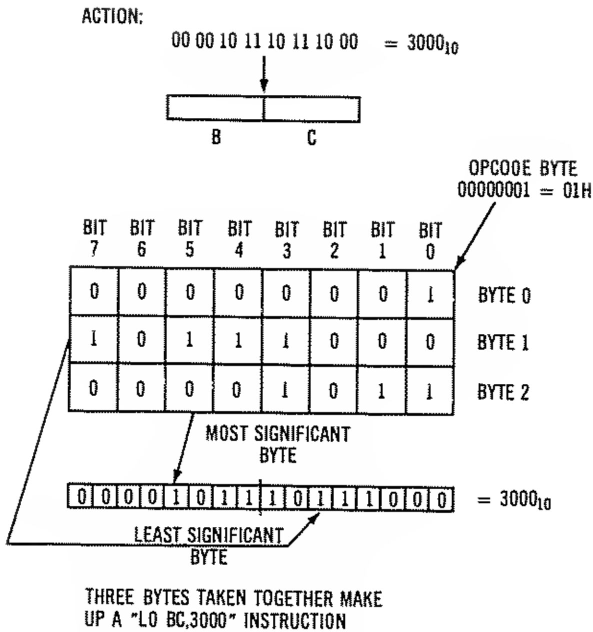


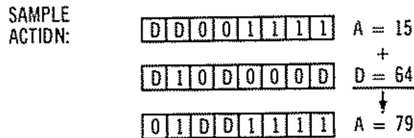
Fig. 3-3. Immediate addressing, 16 bits.

worry about putting data in the right order; the assembler program will do it for you. When the assembler sees the "LD BC,3000" it will generate a 3-byte instruction, with the data reversed in the second and third bytes. If you are "patching" code in machine instructions, however, or entering instructions in machine form (and there are some occasions when this must be done), you must be aware of this format.

Register Addressing

When a program adds two operands from cpu registers, the cpu knows that one of the operands (the destination) is in the A register. The location of the second operand (the source) must be coded in the instruction, however. Now, we have 14 general-purpose cpu registers, A, B, C, D, E, H, and L and their primed equivalents. As only one set, the primed or non-primed, is active at any given time, there are really only seven registers that may be used in an ADD operation with the A register. Does it sound reasonable to have a one-byte operation code, followed by two bytes indicating the code for the cpu register? Not at all. Since in three bits we can express the

numbers 0 through 7 (000 through 111 binary), we can in fact *code* those register names into a three-bit value contained within the instruction itself. This code is called a *field*, since it is smaller than a byte. Its use is shown in the "ADD A,D" instruction of Figure 3-4 which adds the D register to the A register. The *register field* value of 010 signifies that the D register will be used in the ADD. Note that the instruction is only one byte; that byte includes both opcode information and the register field information.



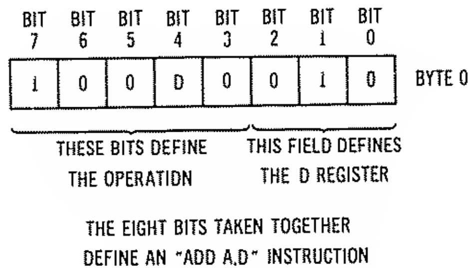


Fig. 3-4. Register addressing.

In addition to register fields that specify single cpu registers, certain instructions specify register pairs. There were originally four register pairs in the 8080A, A and flags, B and C, D and E, and H and L. Because of this many instructions will have a two-bit field (not a value judgment) that is used to specify one of the four original pairs. An example of this would be the "ADD HL,BC" instruction which adds register pair BC to register pair HL. As Figure 3-5 shows, a two-bit field within the two-byte instruction is used to specify a code of 00 for register pair BC.

With the expanded instruction set of the Z-80, however, fields must also specify the additional 16-bit registers of IX and IY, as shown in Figure 3-6. Here the instruction is an "ADD IY,SP", in which the contents of the 16-bit SP (stack pointer) register is added to the IY register.

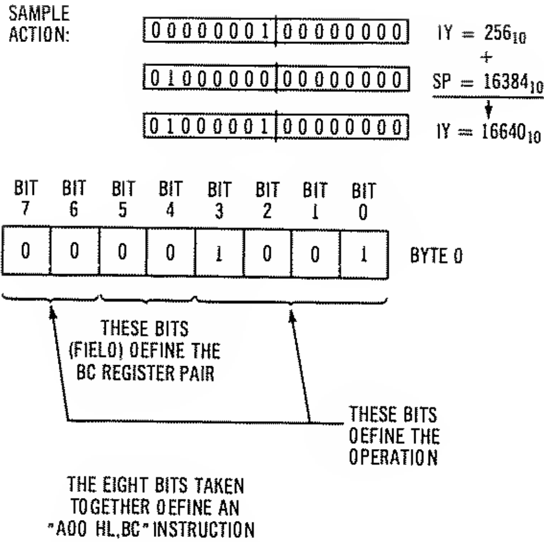


Fig. 3-5. Register pair addressing.

Once again, the assembly-language programmer need not be concerned with constructing the instruction with the proper codes in the fields, but may infrequently need to investigate the machine-language code spewed out by the assembler.

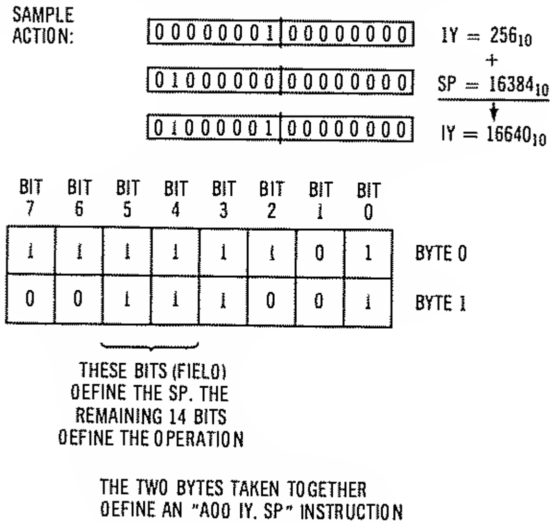


Fig. 3-6. Index register addressing.

Register Indirect

We mentioned this form of addressing earlier in the chapter. This was the main method of addressing memory in the 8008, and it used the HL register to point to the memory location of the operand. The 8080A added the capability to use BC and DE as "pointers" for loading the A register and storing the A register. You may be asking why this method should even be used in the Z-80. The answer is that many instruction types do not allow the operands to be addressed directly. While it is possible to load the A register from a memory location directly specified in an instruction [such as "LD A,(1234H)"], it is not possible to add a memory operand directly to the A register from memory [such as the invalid instruction "ADD A,(1234H)"]. It is possible, however, to set up the HL registers as a register pointer and *then* do an ADD, such as "ADD A,(HL)" or to set up the HL registers and do a variety of other things. In general, the only *direct* way into the cpu registers is through the A register. It alone is the only register (with two exceptions that permit the HL register pair to be loaded or stored) that can be loaded or stored by an instruction that specifies a direct memory address. Other registers in the cpu must use register indirect means to load or store data, or some form of *indexing* covered below. To show how this works, consider the following instructions which load the B, C, and D registers with the contents of memory locations 1000H, 2000H, and 3000H. Two ways of doing this are shown, one by loading the memory location into the A register, and then transferring it to the other cpu register, and the second by using the register indirect method.

```
(1) LO  A,(1000H)  ;GET CONTENTS OF 1000H
    LO  B,A        ;TRANSFER TO B
    LO  A,(2000H)  ;GET CONTENTS OF 2000H
    LD  C,A        ;TRANSFER TO C
    LD  A,(3000H)  ;GET CONTENTS OF 3000H
    LO  O,A        ;TRANSFER TO O
(2) LO  HL,1000H   ;SETUP POINTER REGISTER PAIR
    LO  B,(HL)     ;LOAO B WITH CONTENTS OF 1000H
    LO  HL,2000H   ;SETUP POINTER REGISTER PAIR
    LO  C,(HL)     ;LOAO C WITH CONTENTS OF 2000H
    LO  HL,3000H   ;SETUP POINTER REGISTER PAIR
    LO  O,(HL)     ;LOAO O WITH CONTENTS OF 3000H
```

The register indirect method of addressing is used for many different types of instructions including loads, arithmetic, logical, and shifts. It is *always* used with 8-bit (one byte) type of operations. Because it does not have to specify a memory

location, it is usually a one-byte instruction, and really comes close to being an implied addressing type. A typical register indirect instruction is shown in Figure 3-7 which shows a rotate-type of shift performed on the memory location addressed by the HL register pair used as the pointer.

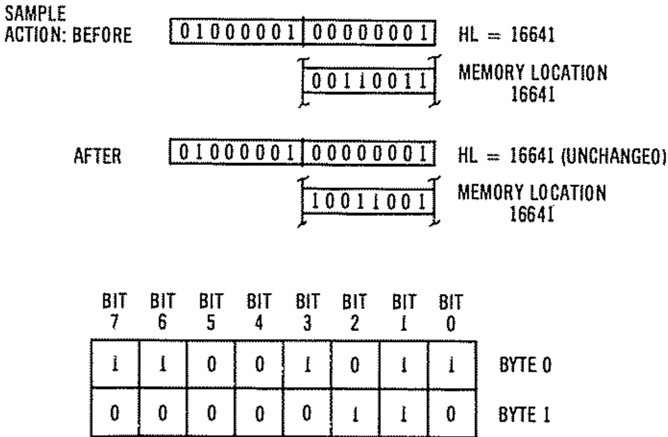


Fig. 3-7. Register indirect addressing.

Direct Addressing

Direct addressing is used with two general types of instructions, loads and jumps. We have been speaking of loading the A register directly and contrasting it with indirect means. When a direct instruction of this type is used, the second and third bytes of the instruction hold the 16-bit (two byte) memory address of the memory location to be used. The instructions "LD A,(4000H)" and "LD (4000H),A", which load A with the contents of location 4000H(16384) and store the contents of A into location 4000H, respectively, are shown in Figure 3-8. The two bytes representing the address are reversed, with the low order byte first, and the high-order second.

The HL register pair may also be stored or loaded directly with this type of addressing. In this case the register pair is stored in *two* memory locations as two bytes of data are in-

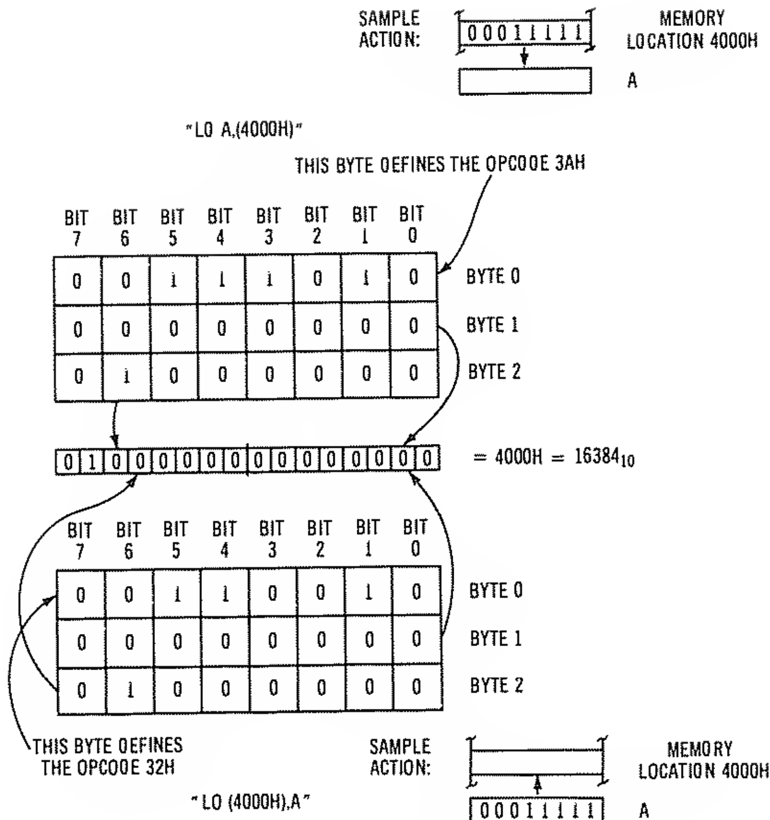
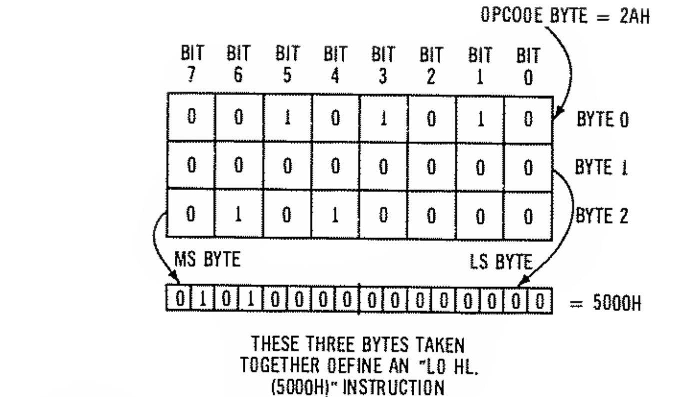


Fig. 3-8. Direct addressing.

volved. As usual, the first (lowest) holds the low-order byte and the next (highest) holds the high-order byte. The address used in the instruction itself points to the first byte of memory to be used. The instruction "LD HL,(5000H)" will load register L with the contents of memory location 5000H (20480) and register H with the contents of location 5001H (20481) as shown in Figure 3-9. Register pairs BC and DE and SP, IX, and IY may also be loaded or stored directly.

Direct addressing is also used with CALLs and jump instructions. All CALLs are direct addressing types, and all jumps are direct addressing except for the relative type of jumps covered later in this chapter. The format for CALLs and JPs is shown in Figure 3-10. The first byte specifies the opcode for the instruction and informs the cpu whether the instruction is conditional or unconditional and whether it is



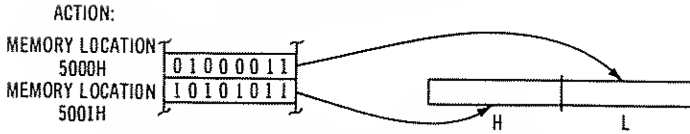


Fig. 3-9. Direct addressing involving HL.

a jump or CALL. The second and third bytes are the address of the jump location or CALL location. This data is not used to reference a memory location as with other types of instructions, but is simply jammed into the program counter to replace the "next instruction" address that was automatically calculated when the instruction was first accessed. The effective action is a jump or CALL to the location specified. As usual, the 16-bit address is in reverse order in the instruction.

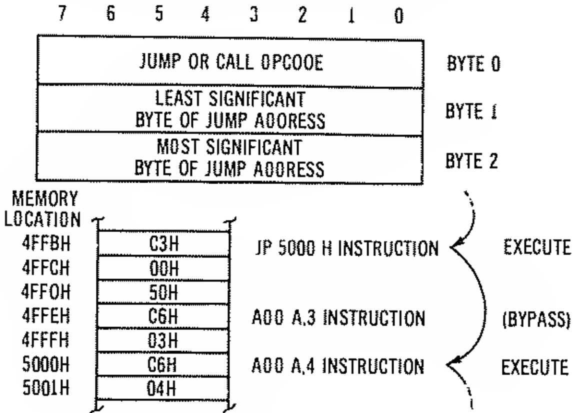


Fig. 3-10. Jump and CALL format.

Relative Addressing

Relative addressing is used only for *relative jump* instructions; no other types of instructions use the relative type of addressing, including CALLs. The relative jump uses two bytes to specify the instruction, one byte for the opcode, and one byte for the memory address. Oh, oh! There's that kid in the back of the class again. He's asked a very valid question—how can one byte specify a memory location when it takes 16 bits or two bytes to specify a memory location value of 0000H to FFFFH (0 to 65535). It would appear that we can't jump to anything other than locations 0 through 255, the values that can be held in one byte. Not true! What if we used that one byte to find the memory location by adding the contents of the program counter (PC) to the value found in the byte. The new address or *effective address* would be the address in the PC plus the value in the instruction byte. What's in the PC? Well, we know that the PC points to the next instruction after the jump. If we add the value in the instruction to the PC we get a value that points to the next instruction −128 through the next instruction plus 127, depending upon what was in the instruction byte *displacement*. In fact, with this type of instruction we can jump within a limited range of 256 bytes of the instruction itself. Since most of the jump destinations within a typical program are close to the jump instruction, this appears to be a valuable instruction, as it saves one byte of instruction length over a regular JP. Let's see how this works. Suppose that at location 4300 we have a jump to location 4350H. After the "JR 4350H" instruction has been fetched, the PC points to location 4302H, the next instruction. If we look at the second byte of the JR instruction, we find that the assembler has put a 4EH there. Adding the 4EH and 4302H we obtain 4350H, which is the jump address (effective address) that is jammed into the PC to cause the jump. This process is shown in Figure 3-11.

The second byte of the JR instruction actually holds an 8-bit *signed* value in this case. Rather than representing a range of binary values from 0 through 255, the displacement in the second byte represents a range of −128 through +127. Binary numbers in this two's complement form will be discussed further in Chapter 6, but for now just remember that the displacement may also be negative in a JR. Of course in the JR, as in other instructions, the programmer does not have to tediously compute the value to be put into the displacement byte; the assembler will automatically do it for him. (That's

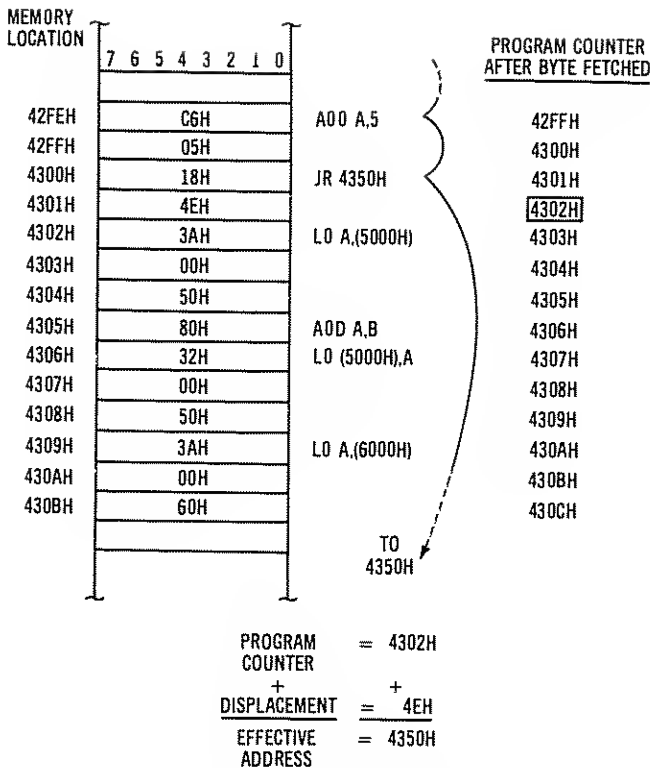


Fig. 3-11. Relative jump action.

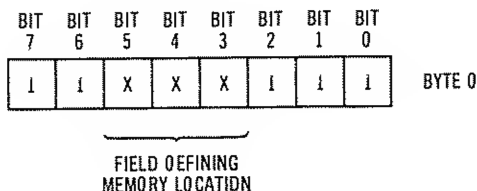
why we have computers!) You'll see in the next chapter that the instruction referenced may actually be given a name, much in the same fashion as a BASIC variable name, which the assembler will use in figuring out what the displacement should be.

A Special Type of Call

The *RST*, or *Rest*art instruction, started out in the 8080A as an instruction geared for *interrupts* to the microprocessor, special signals to the cpu that signal external events such as typed characters or "line printed." In the TRS-80, however, the RST instruction is used for a second purpose, that of a "short" CALL, to call a subroutine. The RST permits a call to one of eight memory locations located at either 0000H, 0008H, 0010H, 0018H 0020H, 0028H, 0030H, or 0038H (decimal 0, 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48 or 56). As the RST is only one byte

long, it saves two bytes over a normal CALL instruction and is valuable for commonly used *subroutines* that would be frequently called in a program.

The appearance of an RST is shown in Figure 3-12. There is a three-bit field that specifies which of the eight locations is being CALLed as a subroutine. The actual location addressed is found by multiplying the contents of the 3-bit



000 = 0000H		MEMORY LOCATION FOR CALL ACTION
001 = 0008H		
010 = 0010H		
011 = 0018H		
100 = 0020H		
101 = 0028H		
110 = 0030H		
111 = 0038H		

Fig. 3-12. Restart instruction.

field by eight. Naturally, the program does not have to do this dirty work, but simply specifies an

```
RST   18H      ;CALL ADDITION SUBROUTINE
```

or similar instruction to generate the instruction.

Indexed Addressing

This is one of the powerful addressing modes added to the base 8080A instructions by the Z-80. *Indexing* allows the assembly-language program to easily access data that is arranged in contiguous tables. Suppose, for example, that we have a table of employee data as shown in Figure 3-13. Each employee record bas name, address, marital status, number of TRS-80 systems owned, and other relevant particulars. It

would be nice to have the capability to access data grouped around a particular employee record in the table. We know that we *could* do this by other addressing means, such as loading the A register directly but this is not an elegant way to do things, and we would like to consider ourselves sophisticated programmers. Take heart! The Z-80 indexed addressing capability affords an elegant solution (or at least a nice one . . . well, it's *pretty* good . . .).

Initially the program loads the value representing the address of the table entry into an index register, in this case IX, although IY could have been used as easily. Now, to access any data near the record, it's simply a case of using an in-

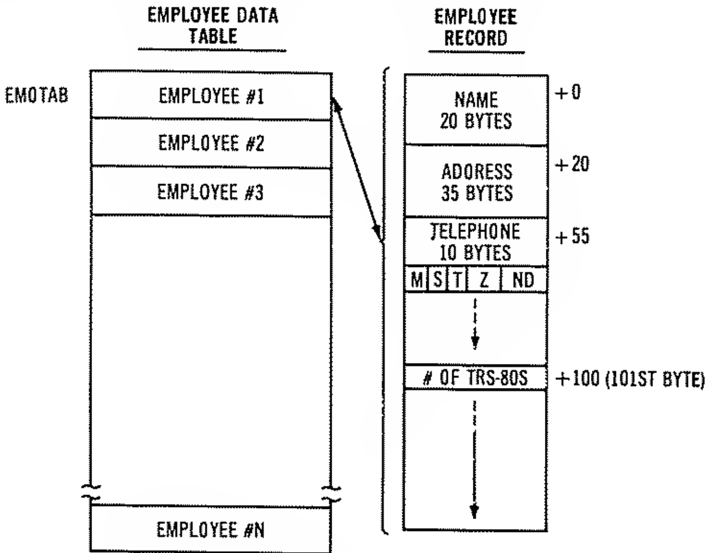


Fig. 3-13. Indexed-addressing table example.

dexed instruction. If the index register had been loaded with 5000H, the instruction

```
LD  B,(IX+100)  ;GET # OF TRS-80S
```

would load the 101st entry, the number of TRS-80 systems, into the cpu B register. In other words, the cpu creates an *effective address*, similar to the relative jump effective address, by adding the contents of the index register with a displacement byte from the instruction. In the case above, the instruction would appear as shown in Figure 3-14. The first two bytes are opcode and a register field that specifies the register

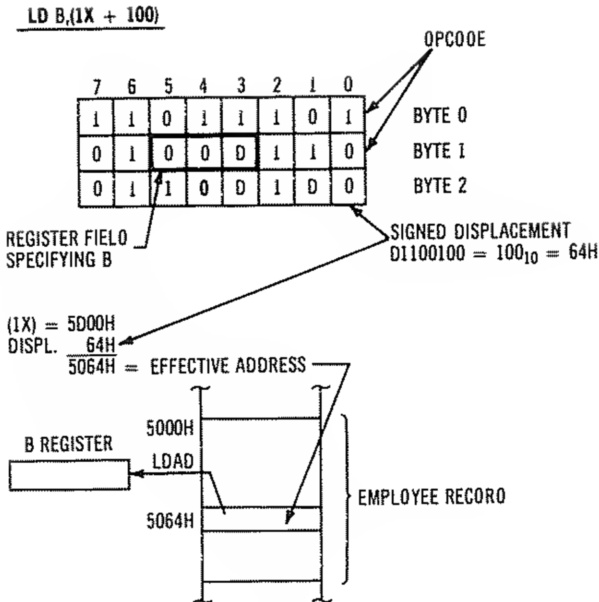


Fig. 3-14. Indexing into table.

to be loaded. The next byte is a *signed* displacement that is added to the IX register to form the effective address; in this case the displacement is 64H as shown. The effective address calculated for the access here is 5000H + 64H or 5064H, the memory address of the number of TRS-80 systems for employee number one.

Indexing using the IX or IY registers may be used for a variety of Z-80 instructions, but, of course, is always used when the address of a memory operand is used in IX or IY.

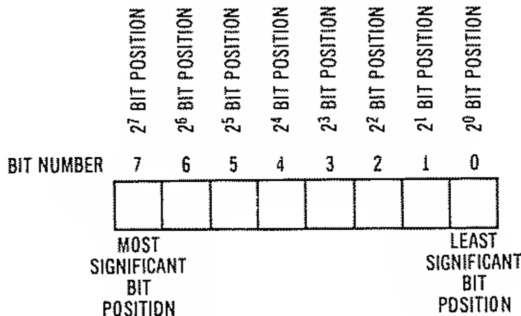


Fig. 3-15. Bit numbering.

We will speak more of indexing in Chapter 9, where table and other data structures are discussed.

Bit Addressing

All of the addressing done in the preceding sections referenced a memory location or cpu register byte. The *bit addressing* mode, used in the *bit* instructions, references a single bit somewhere in memory or a cpu register. The format of this addressing mode specifies a *bit position* from 7 through 0. The instruction

```
SET   6,(HL)     ;SET BIT 6 OF MEMORY BYTE
```

sets bit 6 of the memory location pointed to by the HL register pair pointer. Bits in memory, cpu registers, or other TRS-80 system components are *always* numbered as shown in Figure 3-15. The *most significant bit* (*msb*) is numbered bit 7, and the *least significant bit* (*lsb*) is numbered bit 0. These numbers correspond to the power of two represented by the bit position (bit 7 is 128, 6 is 64, etc.).

This addressing mode is used with the instructions of the bit instruction group only, the BIT, SET, and RES instructions. The bit addressing mode allows other addressing modes to be used in the instruction (as do other instructions, in fact), so that bit addressing may be used in conjunction with register indirect, indexed, or register addressing.

Conclusion and Confusion

This concludes the discussion of addressing modes used in the Z-80. The worst problem in the use of the addressing modes is not in understanding what they do, but in remembering which instructions use which addressing modes. I'm afraid that there is no magical solution to this except reference to Appendices I and II and experience. The saving grace is that there are always many ways to code a particular program, both in terms of which instructions to use and what their addressing types should be. There *is* no *one* correct solution to any programming problem, and there are very few "bad" programs either.

In the next chapter we will look into the use of TRS-80 Editor/Assembler and T-Bug packages and assembly-language and machine-language coding. If you have made it through these first few chapters, you have an excellent chance of becoming a certified TRS-80 assembly-language programmer!

CHAPTER 4

Assembly-Language Programming

Now that you have digested the necessary background information on the TRS-80 and Z-80 (hope it wasn't too filling), we are ready to assemble some assembly-language programs and run them. There are basically two ways to construct and implement machine-language programs for the TRS-80. The first way is by *machine-language* coding and the second is by *assembly-language* coding. In the first method, a program is written out, or coded, on paper and manual methods are used to construct the proper sequence of instructions for the Z-80; the program is actually coded in machine language. In the assembly-language method, the Editor/Assembler is used to *translate* a symbolic form of the instructions into machine-language, which is then loaded into the TRS-80 by the loader portion of the Editor/Assembler. Is the Editor/Assembler really necessary? For all programs over *one* instruction in length, the Editor/Assembler is almost a necessity for ease in editing, assembling, and loading programs. Machine-language can be employed in place of the Editor/Assembler, but only if the user likes to do tedious and exacting work. The exception to this is that *some* machine-language coding will give the TRS-80 user great insights into the way the Assembler constructs programs. Once he has this insight he then will probably want to do all of his coding in assembly language.

Machine-Language Coding

To show the reader how machine-language coding is done, let's write a program to write a "1" at the center of the video display. We know from BASIC that the video display has 1024 different character positions, 64 on the first line, 64 on the next, and 64 on each of the 16 lines making up the screen. We also might know that each character position has a video display memory location associated with it, starting at memory location 3C00H (15360) and ending at 3FFFH (16383). If we wish to display a "1" in the exact center of the screen, or as close as we can get, we would have to *store* that "1" in the memory location associated with line 9, 32 characters over. This will be location 15360 + 8 lines at 64 characters per line + 32 characters or 15360 + 512 + 32 = 15904 (3E20H). See Figure 4-1 for a diagram of the screen and memory associated with it.

Now that we know *where* to store the "1," *how* do we store it? The first thing that comes to mind is a *store* instruction.

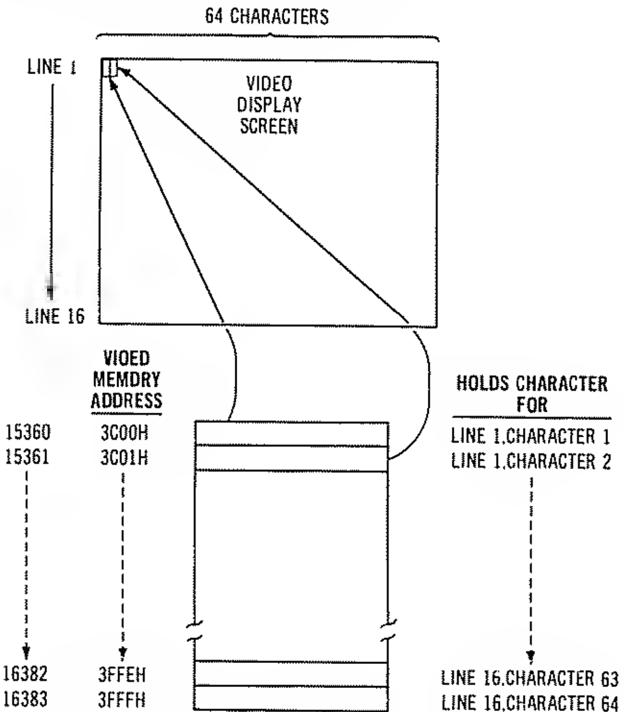


Fig. 4-1. Screen addressing.

We can *load* the "1" into a cpu register and then store it into location 3E20H. One question that comes to mind is the code for the "1." This is a 7-bit ASCII code representing the alphabetic characters, numeric values, and special characters as shown in the Level II or Editor/Assembler manuals. The code for a "1" is the value 00110001 or hexadecimal 31H (the 8th bit is set to a zero). The following instructions load the A register with the code for a one and then store it into location 3E20H.

```
LD  A,31H      ;LOAD A REGISTER WITH "1"
LD  (3E20H),A  ;STORE "1" INTO CENTER OF SCREEN
```

The first instruction in the above *program* is an *immediate* addressing type load which loads "1" from the immediate data in the instruction into the A register. The next instruction stores the A register into location 3E20H. The parentheses around the 3E20H indicate an *address* rather than a data value.

Well, it appears that this program should work. Our next task is to translate the mnemonics for the instructions into the actual opcodes, data fields, and addresses that can be input to the Z-80. We know from our discussion in the last chapter that the 8-bit immediate instructions have one byte for the opcode and one byte for the immediate value. If we look in the Editor/Assembler manual, we find that the opcode for the LD A is 00RRR110, where "RRR" represents the register code for the cpu register to be used. For an A register load, this field is 111, so we now have 00111110, or 3EH. Let's write the opcode down opposite the instruction.

```
3E 31  LD  A,31H      ;LOAD A REGISTER WITH "1"
       LD  (3E20H),A  ;STORE "1" INTO CENTER OF SCREEN
```

We've also written the immediate data value of 31H to be loaded into the A register. Now let's look at the second instruction. As this is a *direct* store, we know that it must contain a two-byte address for 3E20H. In this case the opcode is one byte long and is a 32H, with no fields. The address of 3E20H is put in reverse order into the second and third bytes of the instruction and the opcode is put into the first as follows

```
3E 31     LD  A,31H      ;LOAD A REGISTER WITH "1"
32 20 3E  LD  (3E20H),A  ;STORE "1" INTO CENTER OF SCREEN
```

About the only thing left in this program is to decide where in RAM it is to *reside*. In most programs we must know this before we start a manual or automatic assembly process, since many of the jump and CALL addresses are direct addresses

that refer to locations within the program. A good area for all systems, Level I or II, 4K and larger configurations would be near the end of the 4K RAM area or 18944 [the RAM area starts at 16384, and 18944 is 16384 plus 2560 or 18944 (4A00H)]. We will now assign the locations for the two instructions at 4A00H and 4A01H plus two bytes for the length of the LD A,31H or 4802H.

```
4A00  3E 31     LD  A,31H      ;LOAD A REGISTER WITH "1"
4A02  32 20 3E  LD  (3E20H),A  ;STORE "1" INTO CENTER OF SCREEN
```

In the process of hand-assembling the program above, we have had to do a number of things the Editor/Assembler could have done much more easily. We had to look up the opcodes for each of the instructions, insert the proper code for the A register in the first instruction, reverse the address and put it into the second instruction, find the length of the instructions and properly calculate the locations for each instruction, and find the code for the "1". All of these things *could* have been performed easily by the Editor/Assembler, leaving us free to concentrate on the *logic* of the program. In addition, the Assembler performs many other functions, such as data error checking, relative address range checking, checks on the number of operands, and so forth. For these reasons, we will be concentrating on use of the Editor/Assembler in the remainder of this book, although the reader may do his own machine-language coding from the instructions in the text, if he chooses to do so.

The TRS-80 Editor/Assembler

The TRS-80 Editor/Assembler is a program and documentation for 16K Level I or II systems. In the remainder of the book, we will assume that the reader has access to the Editor/Assembler and to the Editor/Assembler User Instruction Manual (#26-2002). The description in this chapter is meant to supplement the descriptions and operating procedures found in that manual.

As an example of edit and assembly of a new program, let's take the huge two-instruction program we did in machine language, edit and assemble it, load it, and execute it on the TRS-80. The two instructions we had originally were in *symbolic form*, that is we used symbols such as A to represent the A register code of 111.

```
LD  A,31H      ;LOAD A REGISTER WITH "1"
LD  (3E20H),A  ;STORE "1" INTO CENTER OF SCREEN
```

Before we begin editing and assembling, we need a few more things in this program and every program to put the program in proper format for the assembler. An "ORG" statement tells the assembler where the program will reside after it has been loaded. Without an ORG (*ORiGin*) the assembler could not assemble the direct addresses used in some of the instructions. We'll use the same origin as in our machine-language version, 4A00H, the ¾ point of 4K RAM.

```
ORG  4A00H       ;START AT LOCATION 4A00H
LD   A,31H       ;LOAD A REGISTER WITH "1"
LD   (3E20H),A   ;STORE "1" INTO CENTER OF SCREEN
END  4A00H       ;END-START OF 4A00H
```

As the ORG statement does not actually generate a machine language instruction as do the two LDs, it is called a *"pseudo-operation"* or *"pseudo-op."* In place of an opcode, pseudo-ops have *mnemonics* which tell the assembler what to do for program origin, end, and data. The ORG pseudo-op has one *operand* associated with it, a value indicating where the origin is to be.

Another pseudo-op that is an absolute necessity is the *END* pseudo-op. END, of course, tells the assembler that it has reached the end of the assembly-language program. It may or may not have an operand. If it does, the operand indicates the starting point for a program after the load. Here the starting point is 4A00H, so we have specified this value as an operand for the END.

Now before we enter this short program, we should really check over the logic of the program itself. This is called "desk checking," and saves reediting and reassembling the program several times. We may *still* have to change the program in the general case, but a good desk check will reduce the number of times that the program has to be edited and assembled. The only flaw in the program seems to be at the end. When the program is loaded and run the first LD will load the "1" into the A register and the next LD will store the "1" in A into location 3E20H, the center of the screen. What instruction is executed next? The one following the LD (3E20H),A. Since we have not specified another instruction after the second, however, there will be *no* third instruction, or if there is, it will be purely coincidental. This means that after executing the two instructions in the program, the cpu will go merrily on its way, attempting to execute what is referred to as *garbage*. We must terminate the program properly. One way to terminate the program would be with the addition of a third instruction that jumps to a known set of code, or a known

return point for Level I or Level II BASIC. We'll add a jump, but we'll simply jump *to* the jump itself to create an endless loop of jumping to the jump to avoid executing meaningless instructions that would cause unexpected results.

```
        ORG  4A00H      ;START AT LOCATION 4A00H
        LD   A,31H      ;LOAD A REGISTER WITH "1"
        LD   (3E20H),A  ;STORE "1"INTO CENTER OF SCREEN
LOOP    JP   LOOP       ;LOOP HERE
        END  4A00H      ;END-START OF 4A00H
```

We've introduced an important concept here. We did not have to calculate the location of the JP instruction ourselves. We gave the JP instruction a *label* of "LOOP," and let the assembler figure out that the "JP LOOP" is equivalent to "JP 4A05H." The reference to LOOP is a *symbolic address*.

Editing New Programs

We are now ready to use the Editor/Assembler. Load the Editor/Assembler using the procedures outlined in the Editor/Assembler manual. After a successful load, the program will display the prompt "*?" on the video. Now type *I100,10*, followed by an *ENTER*. This puts the Editor into the *I*nsert mode and allows us to enter a number of lines starting with line number 100, and incrementing by 10 for each line. Now type in the five lines. The → (right arrow) may be used to tab to the next column, the ← to backspace for error correction, and the ENTER must be used to indicate the end of each line. After you've entered the five lines, press BREAK and the program will return to the "*" prompt. The entire dialogue is shown in Figure 4-2.

The editing process is now complete. The Edit *buffer* has five lines of text duplicating what we have typed in. As a check on our input we can *P*rint the edit buffer by the command "*P#:*", which will display the entire text buffer of

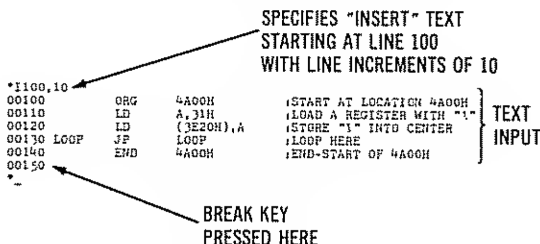


Fig. 4-2. Editing operations.

five lines. The editor does not check the text we are inputting, and will not catch any errors in *syntax* or mispellings (even TRS-80 programmers have been known to make occasional mistakes).

Assembling

Now we are ready to assemble. Type "*A" for assembly, and the Assmbler portion of the Editor-Assembler will assemble the five lines, displaying the assembled code on the screen as shown in Figure 4-3. The right-hand section of the *listing* is the *source code* that we have just entered; the left hand side of the listing is the machine code information that will be loaded into the TRS-80. The first column shows the locations for the instructions, starting at location 4A00H, and incrementing for each instruction, dependent upon instruction length. The next column shows the actual machine code for the instruction. This will range from one to four bytes, dependent upon the type of instruction and its addressing modes. The next column gives the line numbers, starting with line number 100, as we specified.

```
4A00           00100       ORG   4A00H       ;START AT LOCATION 4A00H
4A00 3E31      00110       LD    A,31H       ;LOAD A REGISTER WITH "1"
4A02 32203E    00120       LD    (3E20H),A   ;STORE "1" INTO CENTER
4A05 C3054A    00130 LOOP  JP    LOOP        ;LOOP HERE
4A00           00140       END   4A00H       ;END-START OF 4A00H
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP    4A05
```

Fig. 4-3. Assembly operations.

Where is the machine language code at this time? It is in a *buffer* ready to be written to cassette tape or disc. We will use cassette tape to make it more general for all TRS-80 users. After preparing the tape, press ENTER and the Assembler will write out the *machine code* to cassette. Notice that nothing has been executed in the program to this point. The actions so far have been analogous to hand assembling the instructions and writing down the machine code to be loaded and run. The cassette tape has been used to write a *file* of *object code* representing the machine code of our short program. There's that persistent kid from the back again. . . . The *object* code looks very similar to the machine code, except that it contains addi-

tional data about the origin, file header information (the name of the cassette file—"NONAME" in this case), and other information that will help in the loading of the program.

Loading

We've assembled, edited, and now we are ready to load the object code. After the load, the machine code will be at locations 4A00H through 4A07H and we can execute the program. At this point we are done with the Editor/Assembler and can go back to Level I or II BASIC. We must now use the SYSTEM mode to load the object program; the SYSTEM mode is inherent in Level II BASIC but must be implemented by loading a special SYSTEM tape in Level I BASIC (see the Editor/Assembler manual for directions). The SYSTEM mode is used to load assembler object programs, and to transfer control to the program after it has been loaded. After the SYSTEM prompt of "*?" type in "NONAME" to load the object file from cassette tape. If a successful load is performed, the prompt "*?" will again appear, indicating that the program is now in memory at locations 4A00H through 4A07H. All that remains now is to transfer control to the starting address of the program at 4A00H. We do this by typing in the decimal equivalent of 4A00H after a slash ("/") or simply by typing in a slash, as we have indicated the starting address of the program in the END statement, and this has been saved in the object program. The result should be a "1" displayed in line 8 at the middle of the screen. Not a very impressive beginning for a programmer who will revolutionize the field of assembly-language computing, eh? But by the end of the book. . . .

Assembler Formats

Now that we have successfully assembled our first program, let us discuss assembly-language formats in a little more detail. As we saw from the listing, the basic format of all assembly lines is an optional label, an opcode or pseudo-op mnemonic, operands to fit the instruction or pseudo-op, and optional comments, as shown below.

```
THERE   ADD   A,(IY+100)   ;THIS IS THERE
```

The label may be one to six characters, the first of which must be alphabetic. There are certain *reserved words* that cannot be used for labels, such as register names (IX) and flags (C). These are listed in the Editor/Assembler manual;

just remember to stay away from labels that are the same as flags or registers, such as HL (they will assemble with an error indication).

The opcode or pseudo-op must be one of the mnemonics given in Appendix II or the pseudo-ops given later in this chapter. These mnemonics follow the standard Zilog Z-80 mnemonics, and are also provided in the description of the instructions in the Editor/Assembler manual.

The operands are in the third column of an assembly-language line. The number of operands to use depends upon the instruction and addressing type. As we know from Chapters 2 and 3, some instructions have no operands, such as *SCF*, and others have one or two, such as "BIT 7,(HL). The operands may specify data, as in the immediate load

```
LD   HL,3FFFH    ;LOAD HL WITH 3FFFH
```

or addresses, as in the load

```
LD   HL,(3FFFH)  ;LOAD HL WITH CONTENTS OF 3FFFH
```

Note the difference in data and addresses. Except for jumps and CALLS *addresses are always enclosed by parentheses*, and data is never enclosed in this fashion. Jump and CALL operands are addresses not enclosed by parentheses. The formats for Z-80 instructions are given in Appendix II and in the instruction descriptions of the Editor/Assembler manual. In place of numeric operands for data or addresses, symbolic names may also be used. These names must have a corresponding label somewhere else in the program. An example of this is

```
        LD     A,(COUNT)  ;LOAD COUNT OF COUNTS
        LD     B,(DUKE)   ;LOAD COUNT OF DUKES
                |
                |         ;(other code)
                v
COUNT   DEFB 0            ;LOCATION HOLDING COUNT OF COUNTS
DUKE    DEFB 0            ;LOCATION HOLDING COUNT OF DUKES
```

Some instructions refer to flags; for example, the conditional jumps that test a flag status for the jump. Certain mnemonics are used for the flag=0 and flag=1. These are "C" and "NC" for carry flag=1 and carry flag=0, "Z" for zero flag=1 and "NZ" for zero flag=0, "PE" for parity even (P/V flag=1) and "PO" for parity odd (P/V=0), and "M" for minus (S flag=1) and "P" for positive (S flag=0). These mnemonics are reserved for the use of flag references. An example of an assembler line using a flag reference is

```
ADD  A,37      ;ADD A AND 37
JP   M,OMMY    ;GO IF RESULT NEGATIVE
               ;RESULT POSITIVE HERE
```

The comments column is also optional. When you are *debugging* a program some dark and lonely night and wondering what you did in those ten instructions that have no comments, think back upon this advice: There are never too many comments. A comment may also be used in a line by itself as in the following code.

```
;THIS IS A ROUTINE FOR A STAND-UP COMIC
        LD   A,(JOKE)   ;GET JOKE FROM MEMORY
        LD   (LOC),A    ;DELIVER
```

Just as BASIC allows various expressions, combinations of symbolic variables and constants, so does the assembler allow limited use of expressions. These are detailed in the Editor/Assembler manual. Addition, subtraction, logical AND, and shifts are allowed. We will only be using addition and subtraction in this book, and leave the use of the others to your experimentation. Addition and subtraction are represented by "+" and "−", just as they are in BASIC. As an example of the use of expressions in assembly language coding, let's use the program we've been working with. We stored a "1" into the center of the video display, which was really in the center of the video memory area. We knew that the start of the video memory was at 3C00H, and that we wanted to store the "1" at the 512 + 32 character position on the screen. The following code will perform the store.

```
;STORE AN ASCII ONE NEAR CENTER OF SCREEN
;
        LD   A,31H                ;ASCII ONE
        LD   (3C00H+512+32),A     ;CLOSE TO CENTER
```

The same technique could be used for subtracts, or with expressions consisting of symbolic labels and constants. Note that in the expression, hexadecimal data was intermixed with decimal data. Hexadecimal data is *always* suffixed by an "H" to mark it as hexadecimal. In addition, hexadecimal data must have a leading zero, if the hexadecimal value starts with A through F. The value of A000H will confuse the assembler and result in the assembler trying to find a label of A000H, rather than treating it as data. Decimal values may simply be values without either leading zeros or suffixes, as shown in the ex-

ample. We will use various expressions in the course of the cbapters involved with programming examples in this book, so you will bave a chance to see further use of tbem.

More Pseudo-Ops

When we wrote our first assembly-language program earlier in this chapter we used two pseudo-ops, the END and ORG pseudo-ops. The TRS-80 Editor/Assembler has six additional pseudo-ops, *DEFB*, *DEFW*, *DEFM*, *DEFS*, *EQU*, and *DEFL*. They are used to generate byte, word, and string data, to reserve memory, to equate a label, and to set a label.

The DEFB generates one byte of data rather than an instruction. Suppose that in the program we've been using we wanted to store the ASCII one in memory as a constant value, rather than loading it as an immediate value. The following code would do exactly that. A 31H, the ASCII 1, would be stored at location 4A09. When the program was executed, the instruction at 4A00 would load tbe contents of "ASCONE" into the A register.

```
               00100 ;CODE TO WRITE A ONE AT CENTER OF SCREEN
4A00           00110        ORG   4A00H       ;START AT LOCATION 4A00H
4A00 3A094A    00120        LD    A,(ASCONE)  ;LOAD A REG WITH "1"
4A03 32203E    00130        LD    (3E20H),A   ;STORE "1" INTO CENTER
4A06 C3064A    00140 LOOP   JP    LOOP        ;LOOP HERE
4A09 31        00150 ASCONE DEFB  31H         ;ASCII ONE
4A00           00160        END   4A00H       ;END-START OF 4A00H
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP    4A06
ASCONE  4A09
```

The DEFB can be used as many times as is necessary. Each time it appears, one byte of data is generated. The DEFW, on the other band, *DEF*ines a *W*ord of data, or two bytes. As we are frequently working with 16-bit data for addresses or constants to be used with register pairs, the DEFW is handy. The following code generates both 8- and 16-bit constants by use of DEFB and DEFW.

Of course the 16-bit values generated are in the usual reverse order. The most significant byte is last and the least significant byte is first.

```
          00100 ;BUILD A TABLE OF DATA
4A00      00110      ORG    4A00H
4A00 00   00120      DEFB   0
4A01 11   00130      DEFB   11H
4A02 0A   00140      DEFB   0AH
4A03 1100 00150      DEFW   11H
4A05 0A00 00160      DEFW   0AH
4A07 DEFF 00170      DEFW   -34
0000      00180      END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
```

The DEFB may also be used to generate a one byte ASCII value directly. This saves the programmer the trouble of looking up an ASCII equivalent code for character data. Not only does the assembler do this for *one* byte, but it also generates a whole *string* of characters to be used for messages or other purposes when a DEFM, or *DEF*ine *M*essage is encountered. The following code shows how the DEFB is used to generate one byte ASCII values and how the DEFM is used to generate a string of characters.

```
4A00      00100      ORG    4A00H
4A00 31   00110      DEFB   '1'            ;ASCII ONE
4A01 23   00120      DEFB   '#'            ;ASCII #
4A02 54   00130      DEFM   'THIS BEATS HAND ASSEMBLING'
4A03 48      4A04 49      4A05 53      4A06 20      4A07 42      4A08 45
   4A09 41      4A0A 54      4A0B 53      4A0C 20      4A0D 48      4A0E 4
1      4A0F 4E      4A10 44      4A11 20      4A12 41      4A13 53      4A
14 53      4A15 45      4A16 4D      4A17 42      4A18 4C      4A19 49
  4A1A 4E      4A1B 47      0000         00140        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
```

The resulting characters from DEFM are spread out over the print lines of the listing, along with the location for each. This makes it somewhat difficult to read, but it sure *does* beat assembling the corresponding messages or one byte ASCII data manually.

The DEFS pseudo-op is used to reserve *S*pace in the program. Many times a section of memory must be set aside to be used for a buffer, message area, matrix, or other reserved

```
4A00          00100        ORG   4A00H
4A00 C3CB4A   00110        JP    CONTNU      ;JUMP OVER BUFFER
00C8          00120 BUFFER DEFS  200         ;BUFFER AREA
4ACB 3E0B     00130 CONTNU LD    A,11        ;INITIALIZE COUNT
0000          00140        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
BUFFER  4A03
CONTNU  4ACB
```

area. Although we could use a series of DEFBs or DEFWs to generate the space by defining zeros or all ones, it is somewhat easier to use the DEFS pseudo-op. The DEFS in the above code reserves 200 bytes of storage between the JP and the LD instruction. (It would be very tedious to use 200 DEFBs or 100 DEFWs to do this, although we might do the same thing by a new ORG.)

The first instruction appears at 4A00H through 4A02H. Then 200 bytes (C8H) of reserved space are requested by the DEFS. The next instruction appears at 4A03H plus C8H, or 4ACBH.

The EQU or *EQU*ate pseudo-op is used to equate a label to a value. The label can then be used at any time, without knowing the value. If we haven't exhausted the usefulness of our first program, let us see how this works in a simple case. The code below *EQU*ates the label ASCONE to the value of ASCII one. Any time we wish to load or otherwise handle an ASCII one after the equate, we can simply use the label ASCONE, instead of having to remember the value or having to load the value from a constant location in memory.

```
4A00          00100        ORG   4A00H
0031          00110 ASCONE EQU   31H         ;ASCII ONE
4A00 3E31     00120        LD    A,ASCONE    ;LOAD ASCII ONE
0000          00130        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
ASCONE  0031
```

Notice that when the ASCII one was referenced it was treated as an immediate value, rather than an address. The immediate load resulted in immediate data of one byte representing ASCONE, or 31H. The label may be an address as

```
4A00          00100          ORG     4A00H
4C00          00110 BUFFER   EQU     4C00H          ;INPUT BUFFER
4A00 21004C   00120          LD      HL,BUFFER      ;POINT TO BUFFER
0000          00130          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
BUFFER  4C00
```

well, as in the case of the code above which loads the immediate data value of BUFFER, representing a 16-bit address value, into the HL register pair, thus causing the contents of HL to point to a buffer area.

The last pseudo-op is DEFL. DEFL is similar to EQU in that it sets a label equal to some value or expression. DEFL, however, can be used many times for the same label, while EQU may be used for a label only once in a program. As an example of this, consider the code below. An ASCII "A" has been defined by a DEFL as label ASCA with a value of 41H. In fact, this is an upper case ASCII A. By changing the 6th bit (bit *position* 5) from 0 to 1, the ASCII upper case A may be converted to a lower case A. We'll do this in the program by using DEFL to redefine the value of ASCA as required.

```
4A00          00100          ORG     4A00H
0041          00110 ASCA     DEFL    'A'
              00120
              00130
4A00 3E41     00140          LD      A,ASCA         ;LOAD UPPER CASE
4A02 DD7700   00150          LD      (IX+0),A               ;STORE IN BUFFER
              00160
              00170
0061          00180 ASCA     DEFL    'A'+20H        ;CONVERT TO LOWER
4A05 3E61     00190          LD      A,ASCA         ;LOAD LOWER CASE
              00200
0000          00210          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
ASCA    0061
```

Notice in the above code that ASCA was first recorded by the assembler as a 41H, but when it was redefined by the second DEFL it appears at 61H. (The intervening blank lines represent other code in the program.)

A Mark II Version of the Store "1" Program

We've discussed a lot of concepts in this chapter. Let's try to clarify some of them by writing an expanded version of the program to write a "1" near the center of the screen. In the Mark II version we will write out an entire message to line 9 of the screen. From our earlier analysis, we know that the screen video starts at address 3C00H and ends at 3FFF. We want to start the message at line 9, which is 8*64 characters from the start of the screen memory, or 3C00H + 512. To simplify matters we will write out an entire line of 64 characters. We'll use register pair HL to point to each of the characters in the message and index register IX to point to the next byte of the video display memory. As we write out each character, we'll adjust HL and IX by adding one to point to the next character and next video memory address. To determine wben we've reached the end of the message, we'll put a zero at the end and test for zero as we transfer each character. Zero (null) is not a valid ASCII character, so we will know when we have written 64 characters to tbe screen. The program for this is shown below.

```
                00100 ;MARK II VERSION. WRITES MESSAGE TO LINE 9
                00110 .
4A00            00120          ORG   4A00H
3C00            00130 VIDEO    EQU   3C00H          ;START OF SCREEN VIDEO
4A00 21184A     00140 START    LD    HL,MESSGE      ;SETUP MESSAGE PNTR
4A03 DD21003E   00150          LD    IX,VIDEO+512   ;POINT TO LINE 9
4A07 7E         00160 LOOP     LD    A,(HL)         ;GET NEXT CHARACTER
4A08 FE00       00170          CP    0              ;TEST FOR END
4A0A 2809       00180          JR    Z,DONE         ;GO IF DONE
4A0C DD7700     00190          LD    (IX),A         ;STORE IN VIDEO
4A0F 23         00200          INC   HL             ;ADD ONE FOR MESSAGE
4A10 DD23       00210          INC   IX             ;ADD ONE FOR VIDEO
4A12 C3074A     00220          JP    LOOP           ;CONTINUE
4A15 C3154A     00230 DONE     JP    DONE           ;ENDLESS LOOP
```

```
4A18 54         00240 MESSGE  DEFM    'THIS IS THE MARK II VERSION

4A19 48       4A1A 49       4A1B 53       4A1C 20       4A1D 49       4A1E 53
   4A1F 20       4A20 54       4A21 48       4A22 45       4A23 20       4A24 4
D       4A25 41       4A26 52       4A27 4B       4A28 20       4A29 49       4A
2A 49       4A2B 20       4A2C 56       4A2D 45       4A2E 52       4A2F 53
 4A30 49       4A31 4F       4A32 4E       4A33 20       4A34 20       4A35 20
    4A36 20       4A37 20       4A38 20       4A39 20       4A3A 20       4A3B
 20       4A3C 20       4A3D 20       4A3E 20       4A3F 20       4A40 20
4A41 20       4A42 20       4A43 20       4A44 20       4A45 20       4A46 20
   4A47 20       4A48 20       4A49 20       4A4A 20       4A4B 20       4A4C 2
0       4A4D 20       4A4E 20       4A4F 20       4A50 20       4A51 20       4A
52 20       4A53 20       4A54 20       4A55 20       4A56 20       4A57 20
 4A58 00        00250           DEFB    0
0000            00260           END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
DONE    4A15
LOOP    4A07
MESSGE  4A18
START   4A00
VIDEO   3C00
```

The first statement puts the origin of the program at 4A00H, the location we have been using all along. VIDEO is equated to 3C00H, the start of the video display area. The next two instructions load HL witb a 16-hit value representing the start of the message and load IX with the start of line 9 (3C00H+512). The instruction at LOOP loads the *next* character from the message. To begin with, this is the first letter of the message at 4A18H, but the contents of HL will he incremented by one with each storage of a character. The LD at loop uses register indirect addressing to load the memory location that HL points to. As each character is loaded, the instruction CP 0 tests for a zero hyte. A zero has heen put at the end of the message to indicate the terminating condition. Notice that no other ASCII character in MESSGE is zero. Normally, the JR Z,DONE will not transfer control to location DONE because the character will *not* be zero and the Z flag will not be set. In every case except the last character the program "falls through" to the instruction at 4A0CH which

stores the character in the location pointed to by the index register IX. In this case the displacement of the index register addressing is zero (the last byte) so the *effective address* is simply the contents of the index register itself. The next two instructions add one to the HL (message) pointer and IX (video) pointer. The jump at 4812H loops back to location LOOP where the process is repeated for the 64 characters of MESSGE. On the 65th character, the byte *is* zero, the Z flag is set on the compare, and the jump to DONE is taken. The instruction at DONE jumps to itself to create an endless loop.

There are many ways that this program could be implemented. Relative jumps could have been used in place of direct jumps in two places, for example, or the loop may have been made more efficient by using other types in instructions. However, as a second program, it is not a bad effort, and employs quite a few of the things we have been discussing in the last three chapters.

This program can be edited, assembled, loaded, and executed in the same manner as the first we discussed, and the reader is urged to do so.

Further Editing and Assembling

We have touched on a few basics in regard to editing and assembling. A complete description of editing modes is covered in the Editor/Assembler manual. The editing functions of the Editor/Assembler permit source lines to be deleted or modified either on a line or character basis and are similar to the EDIT mode of LEVEL II BASIC. There are additional capabilities of the assembler that we haven't discussed, primarily in regard to assembly options such as not producing object code, listings, waiting on errors, and so forth. We will attempt to fill in many of these as we give programming examples in the next chapter, but it would benefit the reader to review the first portion of the Editor/Assembler manual and run some practice examples in both the edit and assembly mode.

In the next chapter we'll cover T-BUG and debugging of programs. T-BUG is used to debug assembled and loaded assembly-language programs, but may also be used to hand assemble and load machine-language programs. If the reader still isn't convinced of the merits of the Editor/Assembler, if he has limited memory, or if he simply likes to do machine-language coding, he will find the chapter very useful.

CHAPTER 5

T-BUG and Debugging

In the past chapters we've learned about the architecture and instruction set of the TRS-80 and something about editing, assembly, and loading of an assembly-language program. The actual sequence of events for an assembly-language program is identical to BASIC programs. The program is first defined by some type of specification—what will the program do and how will the input and output look. The program is then coded. After a desk check, the program is assembled and reassembled if there are assembly errors. When an error-free assembly has been achieved, the resulting program is loaded and executed. Chances are the program will not run the first time, and may not run the fifth time. That's where *debugging* and a debug package, such as T-BUG comes in.

T-BUG is an assembly-language program that can be used to debug assembly-language code, or to enter machine-language code. T-BUG allows the assembly-language programmer to print the contents of locations, to modify locations, to print the register contents, and to debug small segments of code by breakpointing. It would be virtually impossible to debug an assembly-language program without some means to do these things, as each program would have to be completely error free before execution. There are very few programmers that have written a moderately large error-free assembly-language program that ran the first time!

Loading and Using T-BUG

T-BUG is loaded into Level I by the CLOAD command and into Level II by the SYSTEM command with a file name of

"TBUG". After T-BUG has been successfully loaded, a prompt sign of "#" will be present in the left hand corner of the display.

Since we will be debugging all of the programs in the remainder of the book using T-BUG, it is important to know where in RAM T-BUG resides, so that we may avoid that area of memory in assembling programs. Figure 5-1 shows the memory mapping when T-BUG is present. Level II T-BUG occupies 4380H through 4980H, or up to the first A00H (2560) locations of RAM. Level II T-BUG uses an "internal" stack area starting from 4980H, so that no RAM outside of the first 1024 locations will be used by any T-BUG function. We will be safe, then, in assembling our programs to run anywhere in the RAM area above 4A00H. We will use 4A00H as the starting location for all of our programs, giving us 600H (1536) bytes of memory for the reader with 4K of RAM (and who must program in machine language) up to a maximum of 44K for those readers with larger systems.

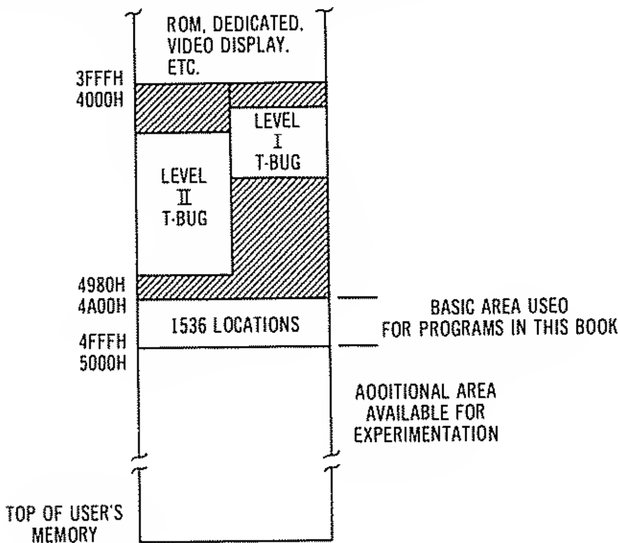


Fig. 5-1. Memory mapping with T-BUG present.

T-BUG Commands

T-BUG has nine commands, all specified by one character, M, X, R, P, L, B, J, F, and G. Some of the commands have arguments (data associated with the command) and some do not.

Let's load T-BUG and examine the commands available. After a successful load the first 16 columns of the video display are cleared and the program displays a "#" at the upper left column of the screen. The format of the M command is #M aaaa where aaaa is a hexadecimal value (can't get away from hexadecimal, can we!) representing the *M*emory location we wish to examine. After the last digit is entered, T-BUG will display a two digit hexadecimal value representing the contents of the memory address. Try the M command with a value of 4A00H. You will get a display of the contents of 4A00.

```
# M 4A00 21
```

Now hit the ENTER key, and you will find that the next location will also be displayed.

```
# M 4A00 21
4A01 FF
```

This process can be continued to display successive locations until either memory or you are exhausted. Hitting an "X" at any time terminates the memory display function and brings you back to the monitor prompt again.

```
# M 4A00 21
4A01 FF
4A02 FF
4A03 FF
#
```

Entering data in place of ENTER will change the memory location to the values entered. Two hexadecimal digits must be entered. Let's go back to the original (Mark I) version of the program to write a "1" near the center of the screen. The program is shown below.

```
4A00          00100       ORG   4A00H       ;START AT LOCATION 4A00H
4A00 3E31     00110       LD    A,31H       ;LOAD A REGISTER WITH "1"
4A02 32203E   00120       LD    (3E20H),A   ;STORE "1" INTO CENTER
4A05 C3054A   00130 LOOP  JP    LOOP        ;LOOP HERE
4A00          00140       END   4A00H       ;END-START OF 4A00H
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP   4A05
```

Starting at location 4A00H, let's enter the machine code for that program. The entry will look something like this at the end.

```
# M 4A00 3E
4A01 FF 31
4A02 FF 32
4A03 FF 20
4A04 FF 3E
4A05 FF C3
4A06 FF 05
4A07 FF 4A
#
```

We can now go back and check the locations by the M command to verify that all data has been entered correctly. This is really not so much a check on machine malfunction as it is on *operator* malfunction.

The J, or *J*ump, command in T-BUG allows the user to transfer control to a location for execution. Specifying J aaaa causes the monitor to jump to location aaaa, where aaaa is again a hexadecimal four-digit value. We could at this point perform a J 4A00 to execute the Mark I version of the program. If we do that, however, the program will be "hung up" in an endless loop to itself at location 4A05. The only way to get out of the loop in Level I is to reload T-BUG; in Level II T-BUG may be reentered by a SYSTEM transfer to 4380H (17280), but the recovery is still a nuisance.

The B command allows us to execute a program up to a point where control is returned to the T-BUG monitor, thus keeping the debugging from becoming a series of recovery procedures as it goes off into cloud cuckoo land. The B command establishes a *breakpoint.* At the breakpoint location control is returned to the monitor where locations or registers may be examined, a new breakpoint may be established a little further on, and the progress of the program may be checked.

Let us see how the *B*reakpoint operates. In this simple program, suppose that we want to stop at location 4A02 to verify that 31H did in fact get loaded into the A register. The B command would be

```
# B 4A02
```

Now we could execute the jump to 4A00H to start execution by

```
# J 4A00
```

The instruction at 4A00 would then be executed. After this instruction the breakpoint would be encountered at 4A02 (an instruction returning control to the T-BUG monitor) and T-BUG would be reentered, with a display of the # in the upper left-hand corner.

After the breakpoint, the first order of business is to execute an F command. Entering an F restores the instruction

that was temporarily replaced by the breakpoint. Entering a breakpoint address causes the monitor to place a CALL instruction to the breakpoint-handling routine in T-BUG. Since the CALL is three bytes long, it replaces the three bytes in the program at the breakpoint instruction. The three bytes of the program must be restored before proceeding and the F accomplishes this.

Before proceeding the user can now examine memory locations or cpu registers to see what program actions have occurred. About the only thing that can be verified here is that 31 was indeed loaded into the A register. We can examine the A registers and all cpu registers by using the T-BUG R command (*R*egister). The R command causes a display of all cpu registers in the format shown in Figure 5-2. In our case the display might look like the following.

```
# FFFF FFFF
  FFFF FFFF
  3142 00FD
  41E9 43E0
  FFFF FFFF
  4980 4A02
```

The 31 in the A register position indicates that the A register was properly loaded.

To continue from this point, another breakpoint must be put into the program a little further on. In our program the next breakpoint will be at 4A05 to prevent an endless loop. Rather than a J command to resume execution, however, a G (*G*o) should be used. The G command will cause resumption of the program at the breakpointed instruction (4A02), with

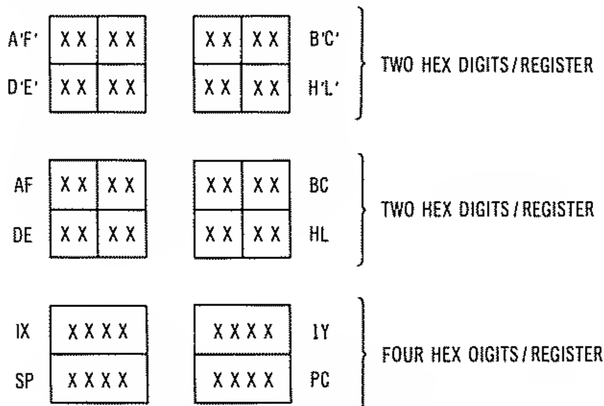


Fig. 5-2. T-BUG R command format.

all registers properly restored and no ill effects from having had the breakpoint. If the reader will execute the following sequence he will see the "1" written out to the center of the screen, followed by the "#" for the 4A05H breakpoint at the upper left hand corner of the screen.

```
#F        (to restore the 4A02 area)
#B 4A05   (to set a new breakpoint)
#G        (to resume execution)
```

What if the user had wanted to cbange the contents of a register location before proceeding from a breakpoint. This is certainly possible, and necessary in debugging. The procedure *is* somewhat complicated, however. To change the contents of a register, a memory location representing the current contents of that register must be changed. The memory locations representing all of the cpu registers are shown in Figure 5-3. To change the D register, for example, memory

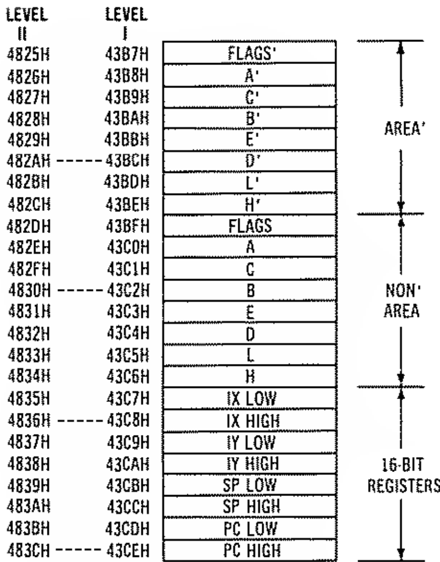


Fig. 5-3. T-BUG register locations.

location 43C4H must be examined by an M command and new data entered. To change a 16-bit register, two memory locations must be changed, representing the high-order byte and the low-order byte of that register, as shown in the figure. To change the IY register to 4FE3H, for example, memory location 43CAH must be changed to 4FH, and memory location 43C9H must be changed to E3H. After the change in one

or more registers, a J (jump) or G (go) command must be executed to effect the change.

T-BUG Tape Formats

As we mentioned earlier, debugging assembly-language programs is a major part of the assembly-language programming process. The object is to find as many bugs as possible before reassembling the program to reduce the time spent in editing and reassembling. As each bug is found it *may* be corrected in machine language, if the user knows the instruction formats and addressing modes (see, we told you that it would help to get a background in the instruction set). Of course the user can avoid this approach and simply reassemble the program each time bugs are found.

As a simple example of this *patching* technique, let's go back to the code we've entered for the Mark I version of the screen output routine. Suppose that we had found that instead of writing a "1" to the screen, we should have written an "*". Using T-BUG it is a simple matter to change the 31H in the second byte of the first instruction to the code for an asterisk, 2AH.

```
# M 4A01 31 2A        (hit X)
#
```

Suppose that we had wanted to *insert* code between two existing instructions. That is a little more difficult to patch, but still possible. If we had wanted to store one "1" in both the 32nd and *31st* character positions we could patch in the instruction to store in 3E1FH (31st position) by putting a jump to a *patch area* at 4A02, jumping out to the patch area, performing the store in 3E1F, performing the store in 3E20H (destroyed by the jump), and then jumping back to the instruction at 4A05. Of course, the patch area should be in an area of memory unused by our program or by T-BUG. The patches for this are shown below.

```
4A00  3E    (original LD A,31H)
4A01  31
4A02  C3    (patched JP 4B00)
4A03  00
4A04  4B
4A05  C3    (original JP 4A05)
4A06  05
4A07  4A
```

```
4B00   32     (restored store to 3E20H)
4B01   20
4B02   3E
4B03   32     (new store to 3E1FH)
4B04   1F
4B05   3E
4B06   C3     (return to program)
4B07   05
4B08   4A
```

Patching to correct errors can be done as often as required until it reaches the point where the programmer does not know which areas have been patched and which have not. The user can quickly determine his own requirements for reassembly of a patched program.

To provide a means to save patched programs, or to provide a means to save any machine-language program, T-BUG has two additional commands, P for *P*unch tape, and L for *L*oad tape. The P command writes any specified area in memory to cassette tape. The resulting tape format can be read by T-BUG or by the SYSTEM command in LEVEL II. To save locations 4A00H through 4B08H, for example, the command

```
# P 4A00 4B08
```

would be entered for LEVEL I. Level II requires two more arguments, one for the entry point (start) and one for the file name (up to six characters). The level II format might be

```
# P 4A00 4B08 4A00 MARKI      (ENTER)
```

After the command is entered, T-BUG writes out the specified area and includes the entry point and file name for Level II. The format used for Level I write is shown in Figure 5-4.

Once the T-BUG cassette tape has been written it may be loaded at any time by the L command (or the SYSTEM command in Level II). The L command has no arguments, and the tape will start loading after the L has been typed. Tape loading is indicated by the usual asterisk in the lower left hand corner. Successful loading is indicated by the "#" prompt; an error in loading the data will result in an "E" after the load command. The format used for assembly object output is the same as T-BUG's, so that T-BUG may be used to load object tapes produced during assembly.

The above describes the T-BUG commands and their typical use. The reader is urged to experiment with T-BUG as we will be using it in following chapters for debugging purposes. A reference list of T-BUG commands follows.

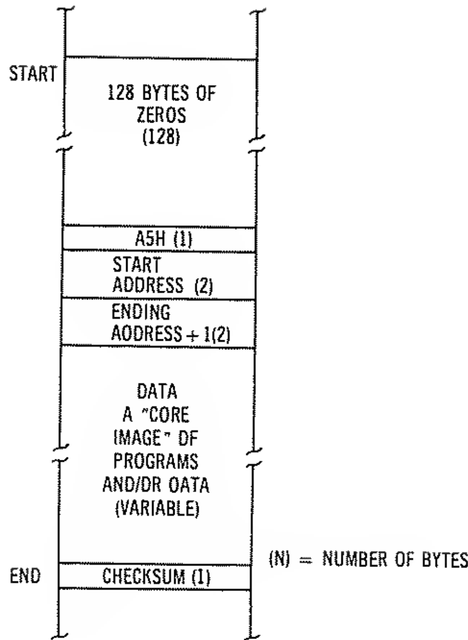


Fig. 5-4. T-BUG tape format.

Format	*Description*
# M aaaa	Display location aaaa
ENTER (after M)	display next location
X (after M, J, B, P)	Exit operation
# R	Display registers
# P aaaa bbbb (Level I)	Write cassette from aaaa through bbbb
# P aaaa bbbb cccc NAME (Level II)	Write cassette from aaaa through bbbb with starting address cccc and file name NAME
# L	Load a T-BUG tape
# B aaaa	Set breakpoint
# F	Restore instruction after breakpoint
# G	Continue from breakpoint
# J aaaa	Jump to location aaaa

Standard Format in Following Chapters

The program in the following chapters will illustrate the use of Z-80 instructions in accomplishing certain types of operations. All code will be assembled starting at location 4A00H, so that T-BUG may be used to debug or investigate the actions of the programs discussed. At the reader's option, these programs may be assembled and loaded using T-BUG, and then debugged, or the machine-language code for the program may be entered using T-BUG without assembly. The RAM area available for patching, buffers, or other use is located from 4A00H through 4FFF for minimum 4K RAM systems, or from 4A00H through "top of memory" for larger systems.

SECTION II

Programming Methods

CHAPTER 6

Moving Data in Bytes, Words, and Blocks

This chapter will discuss ways in which to move data from the cpu to memory, between cpu registers, from memory to cpu, and from one area of memory to another. At first glance this might not seem like such an exciting topic, but the addressing concepts practiced here can be applied to many of the other instructions covered in later chapters. In addition, the block move instructions are interesting instructions that are not found in other 8-bit microprocessors. They are some of the most powerful features of the Z-80.

Byte and Word Moves

We have already seen examples of loading and storing data into single or double registers in the Z-80. Eight-bit loads can be accomplished by immediate loads or by loading operands from memory. Suppose that we want to load *all* of the cpu registers except for the PC (program counter) with 8 bits of data. Remember that there are fourteen general purpose cpu registers, seven in each set of prime and non-prime registers, and three 16-bit or two-byte registers, the IX, IY, and SP. We'll ignore the I and R registers as these are not generally used except for interrupt handling and refresh operations.

Let's consider the 8-bit general-purpose registers first. We would like to write a program to load the registers as follows:

A register	Loaded with 9
B	11
C	12
D	13
E	14
H	15
L	16
A′	1
B′	3
C′	4
D′	5
E′	6
H′	7
L′	8

Loading these values into the cpu registers with immediate values is easy, because all cpu registers may be loaded by an immediate data value. The only trick here is swapping register sets. The swap is done by the EX AF,AF′ instruction, which swaps the two A registers and the flag, and the EXX instruction which swaps all other registers. The main question (raised from the back of the room again, I see) is which set is which? It is up to the programmer to keep track of which of the two sets of registers he is using. When the TRS-80 is powered up the non-prime set is *active;* performing one or both of the exchange instructions switches the cpu to the other set. The primed set is simply the set of registers that is not currently active, and the program must keep track of which set is being used, not unlike remembering which of two book ends you've hidden a ten-dollar bill under. The following program loads all general-purpose cpu registers with the indicated values above. Put a breakpoint at END, jump to START, and then display the registers by an R command in T-BUG, and you should see a sequence of 00 through 10H displayed for the general-purpose registers. The IX, IY, SP, and PC will hold meaningless values.

```
                00100 ;ROUTINE TO LOAD ALL REGISTERS
4A00            00110        ORG   4A00H
4A00 3E09       00120 START  LD    A,9
4A02 060B       00130        LD    B,11
4A04 0E0C       00140        LD    C,12
```

```
4A06 160D      00150          LD      D,13
4A08 1E0E      00160          LD      E,14
4A0A 260F      00170          LD      H,15
4A0C 2E10      00180          LD      L,16
4A0E 08        00190          EX      AF,AF'          ;SWITCH ACTIVE REGS
4A0F D9        00200          EXX                     ;SWITCH ACTIVE REGS
4A10 3E01      00210          LD      A,1
4A12 0603      00220          LD      B,3
4A14 0E04      00230          LD      C,4
4A16 1605      00240          LD      D,5
4A18 1E06      00250          LD      E,6
4A1A 2607      00260          LD      H,7
4A1C 2E08      00270          LD      L,8
4A1E 08        00280          EX      AF,AF'          ;SWITCH BACK
4A1F D9        00290          EXX                     ;SWITCH BACK
4A20 C3204A    00300 END      JP      END             ;LOOP HERE
0000           00310          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
END     4A20
START   4A00
```

Now suppose that we would like to load constants from memory instead of immediate values. (Don't ask why, kid, just do it!) There are two ways to handle this approach, as we explained in an earlier chapter. One way would be to set up HL, DE, BC, IX, or IY to point to the constants to be loaded and to then load in tbe values using either register indirect addressing or indexing. This would work fine if the data were grouped in a *contiguous* area, but would require setting up a new value in the pointer register for each load if the constants were scattered over different locations in memory. The second approach, which we'll implement in the following program uses the A register as a pipeline to channel data from the constants in memory to each of the cpu registers.

```
               00100 ;USING A AS A PIPELINE
4A00           00110          ORG     4A00H
4A00 3A0F4A    00120 START    LD      A,(ELEVEN)      ;11
```

```
4A03 47         00130        LD    B,A          ;MOVE TO B
4A04 3A104A     00140        LD    A,(TWELVE)   ;12
4A07 4F         00150        LD    C,A          ;MOVE TO C
4A08 3A114A     00160        LD    A,(THIRTN)   ;13P
4A0B 57         00170        LD    D,A          ;MOVE TO D
4A0C C30C4A     00180 LOOP   JP    LOOP         ;LOOP HERE
4A0F 0B         00190 ELEVEN DEFB  11
4A10 0C         00200 TWELVE DEFB  12
4A11 0D         00210 THIRTN DEFB  13
0000            00220        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP     4A0C
THIRTN   4A11
TWELVE   4A10
ELEVEN   4A0F
START    4A00
```

Storing 8-bit data works in pretty much the same fashion as loading cpu registers. The general registers can always be stored by using a register pair as an indirect pointer, but only the A register can be loaded directly from memory. If we were to store the contents of the cpu registers back into the constant locations in memory, the register pair or index register used as the pointer would have to be set up with the new location each time a store was performed, as shown in the program below. The reader may care to execute this program directly after the load program to verify that the registers have been stored. Zero ELEVEN, TWELVE and THIRTN after the load breakpoint, put in a new breakpoint at 4A1EH, and jump to 4A12H to perform the store. (Don't forget the "F" after each breakpoint to restore the instruction.)

```
                00100 ;CODE TO STORE REGISTERS
4A12            00110        ORG   4A12H        ;NEXT LOC AFTER LOAD CODE
4A12 7A         00120 START  LD    A,D          ;13
4A13 32114A     00130        LD    (THIRTN),A   ;RESTORE
4A16 79         00140        LD    A,C          ;12
4A17 32104A     00150        LD    (TWELVE),A   ;RESTORE
```

```
4A1A 78        00160        LD   A,B         ;11
4A1B 320F4A    00170        LD   (ELEVEN),A  ;RESTORE
4A1E C31E4A    00180 LOOP   JP   LOOP        ;LOOP HERE ON END
4A11           00190 THIRTN EQU  4A11H
4A10           00200 TWELVE EQU  4A10H
4A0F           00210 ELEVEN EQU  4A0FH
0000           00220        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP    4A1E
ELEVEN  4A0F
TWELVE  4A10
THIRTN  4A11
START   4A12
```

Sixteen bits of data are somewhat harder to move around. Register pairs can be stored directly to memory, may be stored in the stack by PUSHes (covered in a later chapter), or may be transferred by using the HL register pair as a routing point. Storing the register pairs in memory is not generally something that is commonly required. Loading 16-bit data into register pairs can be handled by immediate loads for constants, by direct loading of register pairs, and by routing other 16-bit data through HL. A common trick in loading *two* single registers with two separate operands is to perform an immediate load of a register pair. This only works, of course, when the two single registers involved happen to be in the same register pair. The resulting instruction sequence is much shorter than 8-bit loads.

```
               00100 ;LOADING SINGLE REGISTERS WITH 16-BIT LOADS
4A00           00105        ORG  4A00H
4A00 010201    00110 START  LD   BC,256+2    ;LOAD B WITH 1,C WITH 2
4A03 110403    00120        LD   DE,768+4    ;LOAD D WITH 3,E WITH 4
4A06 C3064A    00130 LOOP   JP   LOOP        ;LOOP HERE FOR BP
0000           00140        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP    4A06
START   4A00
```

Transferring data between two register pairs is almost always done by PUSHing the first register pair and POPping the second to transfer data from the first into the second. To load HL with the contents of BC, for example, the instructions

```
PUSH  BC    ;BC TO STACK
POP   HL    ;RETRIEVE BC, PUT IN HL
```

would be performed.

Filling or Padding

All of the foregoing is fairly abstract, even when T-BUG is being used to verify the results of the code. Get ready for some spectacular visual effects! Fortunately for us and especially that reader who keeps nodding off, moving identical data to fill buffer areas or to initialize tables may be observed on the display. After all, the display is simply additional memory dedicated to the 1024 characters or 6144 *pixels* of a display.

Let's illustrate two methods of addressing in a routine to *fill* data. In this routine, a specified data byte from 0 to 255 (OH-FFH) is written into a memory area from a starting address to an ending address. The fill function is frequently used to "zero" portions of memory, to fill tables with −1 (FFH), or to *pad* character lines with blanks (20H).

The fill character will be in the A register, while the HL register will be set up with the starting address of the memory area to be filled. We could specify either an ending address or the number of bytes to fill. Specifying an ending address would require that we have a 16-bit address that could be used to compare the current fill location with the ending address. The second approach would use a count in one of the registers that would be decremented with each filled byte. When the count reached zero the fill would be over. If a single register were used, the count could be 0 through 255. If we wanted to fill more than 255 bytes we would have to use a register pair, which could specify a fill count of 0 through 65535, which would certainly be adequate for a 64K system! In the following example of the fill we'll try the second approach; we'll put the fill count in a single register. The parameters will be in the registers before the fill starts as shown below.

```
(A)  = character to be filled
(HL) = starting address for the fill
(B)  = number of characters to be filled from 1 to 256
```

```
                00100 ;THIS IS A PROGRAM TO FILL MEMORY FROM
                00110 ;A STARTING ADDRESS FOR A NUMBER OF BYTES
                00120 ;    (A)=BYTE TO BE FILLED
                00130 ;    (HL)=STARTING ADDRESS
                00140 ;    (B)=NUMBER OF BYTES
                00150 ;
4A00            00160        ORG    4A00H       ;START OF PROGRAM
4A00 3E2A       00170 START  LD     A,'*'       ;FILL WITH ASTERISKS
4A02 21003C     00180        LD     HL,3C00H    ;START OF SCREEN
4A05 0600       00190        LD     B,0         ;FILL 256 BYTES
4A07 77         00200 LOOP1  LD     (HL),A      ;FILL BYTE
4A08 23         00210        INC    HL          ;INCREMENT POINTER
4A09 05         00220        DEC    B           ;DECREMENT COUNT
4A0A 20FB       00230        JR     NZ,LOOP1    ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A0C 18FE       00240 LOOP2  JR     LOOP2       ;LOOP HERE ON DONE
4A00            00250        END    START
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP2   4A0C
LOOP1   4A07
START   4A00
```

The first thing that is done in the program is to load A with the data (asterisk in this case) and to load the HL register pair with the starting address of the memory area to be loaded. To enable us to see the results we're using the start of the screen video at 3C00H. The B register is loaded with the number of bytes to be filled. If we had specified 1 through 255 bytes that number would have been filled with asterisks. Specifying zero, however, fills *256* bytes, as we shall see below. LOOP1 through the JR NZ,LOOP1 makes up the *main loop* in the program. For each *iteration* or pass through the loop one byte of data is filled. Initially the byte at 3C00H is filled. Each time through the loop, however, the HL register pair is incremented by one to point to the next memory byte, and the B register is decremented by one to count down. If the count in B has not reached zero, the Z flag is not set by the decrement, and the conditional branch at 4A0AH is taken. If the count has reached zero, the program falls through and the loop at LOOP2 is reached. Notice that the jumps here are

two-byte relative jumps. If we started with a count of zero, the count after the decrement of B is 11111111, as you will see if we subtract a one from eight zeros on paper. Starting with a count of zero, therefore, causes a fill of 256 bytes.

To run the program, assemble and load using SYSTEM or T-BUG. If no breakpoint is used, the program will fill the first four lines of the screen with asterisks. The reader may wish to try other values for the fill by changing the 2AH at 4A01H, or may change the fill area by changing the 3C00H at 4A03H and 4A04.

An Unsophisticated Block Move

Often it is necessary to move data from one block of memory to another block of memory. One example of this would be moving a string of characters that have been input to the screen display area. Another example might be inserting data in a table. The data below the inserted entry would have to be moved down to make room for the new data.

In the next program we'll be implementing some code to move one block of memory to another. We'll use register indirect addressing to accomplish this feat. Register pair HL will point to the *source* block and register pair DE will point to the *destination block*. Register pair BC will contain a count of the number of bytes to be moved. As BC may hold 0 through 65535, any size block up to maximum memory size may be

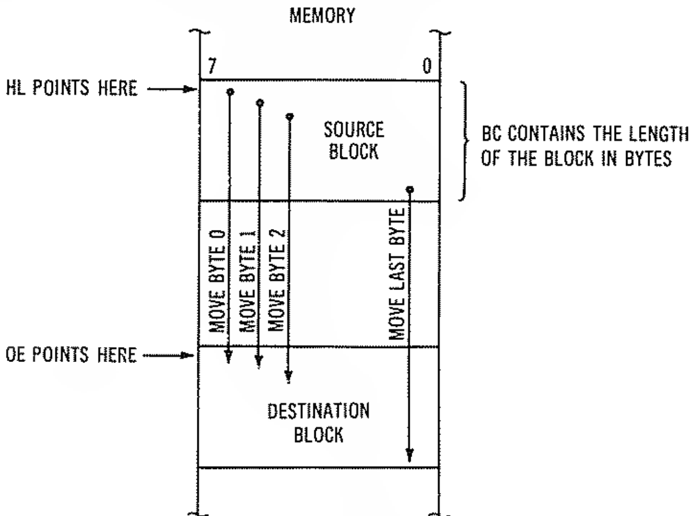


Fig. 6-1. An unsophisticated block move.

moved. Figure 6-1 shows the manner in which the move will be done.

We know that using the HL register pair as a pointer will work with any cpu register. Using BC or DE as a pointer is only useful for loading and storing the A register, however, so all data to be transferred must go through the A register.

```
                00100 ;THIS PROGRAM WILL MOVE
                00110 ;A BLOCK OF MEMORY FROM
                00120 ;ONE AREA TO ANOTHER
                00130 .
4A00            00140       ORG   4A00H
4A00 210000     00150 START LD    HL,0        ;SOURCE
4A03 11003C     00160       LD    DE,3C00H    ;DESTINATION
4A06 01E803     00170       LD    BC,1000     ;1000 BYTES
4A09 7E         00180 LOOP1 LD    A,(HL)      ;GET SOURCE BYTE
4A0A 12         00190       LD    (DE),A      ;STORE
4A0B 23         00200       INC   HL          ;POINT TO NEXT SOURCE
4A0C 13         00210       INC   DE          ;POINT TO NEXT DE
4A0D 0B         00220       DEC   BC          ;DECREMENT COUNT
4A0E 78         00230       LD    A,B         ;GET MS COUNT
4A0F B1         00240       OR    C           ;MERGE LS COUNT
4A10 20F7       00250       JR    NZ,LOOP1    ;GO IF COUNT NOT 0
4A12 18FE       00260 LOOP2 JR    LOOP2       ;LOOP HERE ON DONE
0000            00270       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP2   4A12
LOOP1   4A09
START   4A00
```

The resulting program is shown. Before the loop, HL is loaded with 0, the start of the source block, and DE is loaded with 3C00H, the start of the screen area for the destination. The BC register pair is loaded with the number of bytes to be transferred, in this case 1000. If the program works the way we want it to the first 1000 locations from 0H through 03E7H will be transferred from the ROM BASIC interpreter to the screen. What should we see on the screen? In a program

such as the BASIC interpreter there is a mix of relatively random data. Some of the data will coincidentally represent ASCII characters while some of the data will be actual BASIC messages, such as "MEMORY SIZE". Other data will represent (coincidentally) graphics data of different types. When we actually run the program, then, we'll largely see random patterns, but some messages.

The main loop of the program starts at LOOP1. The first thing that is done is to load a byte into A using HL as a register pointer. The source byte in A is then stored by using DE as the destination pointer. HL and DE are then incremented to point to the next source and destination byte. The count is then decremented by one. If the count is not zero, the program loops back to LOOP1, otherwise the program falls through to LOOP2. Now let's look at the way in which we test for a count of zero. While decrementing a *single* register sets the zero flag if the count decrements to zero, decrementing a register pair sets *no* flags. Why? That's just the way the instructions work. (Never try to be *too* logical with a given instruction set on any computer.) The BC register pair is tested for zero by effectively ORing the B and C registers together. Remember that the A register must be used for an OR operation, and that the OR of any two bits produces a one if either of the bits is a one. If *no* bits are a one then the result is zero in this case, and the zero flag is set. The only time no bits in either the B or C registers will be ones is when the count in BC is zero and hence we have our test.

Have you run the program yet? If you do, you'll find an interesting display of some of the secrets of the Radio Shack interpreter, displayed in living black and white on your TRS-80 screen. Try changing the source address, destination address, and byte count to display different areas of memory. Be careful not to overwrite the program itself or T-BUG, however. Keep the destination from pointing toward the 4000H through 4A00H area!

While the above program is perfectly fine for an 8080A (sniff!), one simply wouldn't want to run such a gaucherie on a Z-80.

An Elegant Block Move

The block move instructions on the Z-80 take the entire code from 4A09H through 4A11H in the above program and reduce it to one instruction! This *is* truly an elegant instruction. The Z-80 instruction for this is the LDIR instruction.

If we recode the program above to work with the LDIR, we come up with the program below.

```
            00100 ;THIS IS AN ELEGANT VERSION OF
            00110 ;A BLOCK MOVE
            00120 ;
4A00        00130       ORG     4A00H
4A00 210000 00140 START LD      HL,0        ;SOURCE
4A03 11003C 00150       LD      DE,3C00H    ;DESTINATION
4A06 01E803 00160       LD      BC,1000     ;1000 BYTES
4A09 EDB0   00170 LOOP1 LDIR                ;OK,BUD,MOVE IT!
4A0B 18FE   00180 LOOP2 JR      LOOP2       ;LOOP HERE AT END
0000        00190       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP2   4A0B
LOOP1   4A09
START   4A00
```

As you can see in the program, the LDIR must have the HL, DE, and BC register pairs initialized to the source address, destination address, and byte count, respectively. Then it goes off looping to itself automatically until the byte count reaches zero. It would be interesting for the reader to examine the registers after the LDIR. We would find that HL and DE point to the last byte transferred *plus one* and that register pair BC contains 0.

The LDDR instruction works the same way as the LDIR instruction except that the register pairs are set up to the *end* of the source block, the *end* of the destination block, and the number of bytes to be transferred. Data is transferred from end to start in the LDDR, as shown in Figure 6-2.

There are two other block move instructions in the Z-80 instruction set, the LDI and the LDD. They operate exactly the same way as the LDIR and the LDDR, except that as each byte is transferred, the instruction pauses and the next instruction is executed. The program must check for the terminating condition of zero count in the BC register pair. The LDI instruction code that follows is identical to the operation of the LDIR, except that the test for BC=0 is done *externally* to the LDI.

```
START   LD    HL,0       ;SOURCE
        LD    DE,3C00H   ;DESTINATION
        LD    BC,1000    ;1000 BYTES
LOOP    LDI              ;TRANSFER ONE BYTE
        JP    PE,LOOP    ;CONTINUE IF BC NOT 0
```

One would expect the Z flag to be set when the byte count in BC is decremented down to zero. This is not the case, however, in either the LDI or LDD. The parity/overflow flag is the one that is set after each transfer. When BC has reached zero, the parity/overflow flag will be reset (PO mnemonic), otherwise it will be set (PE mnemonic). The conditional jump, therefore, is done on overflow set, or "parity even."

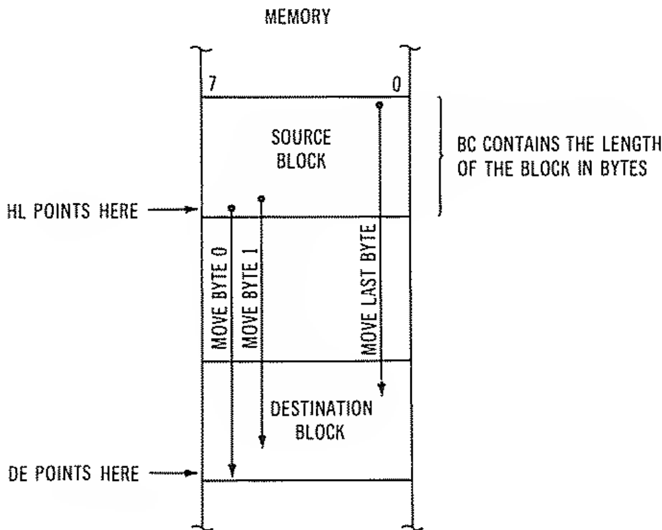


Fig. 6-2. Data transfer for an LDDR.

The LDI and LDD are used when the block transfer action is required, but when there must be intermediate processing between the transfer of individual bytes. Examples of this would be a transfer of a block of data *until* a terminating character such as line feed or null was reached, or transfer of data *except* for lower case characters.

To illustrate this intermediate processing, and to give the reader a graphic example of how the LDI, LDD, LDIR, and LDDR transfer data, we have coded the following program. This program *slowly* transfers a block to video memory in forward fashion, and then transfers another block in back-

ward fashion. Subroutine SLOWLY is used to slow down the transfer by a timing loop after each byte.

```
                00100 ;A GRAPHIC EXAMPLE OF BLOCK MOVES
                00110 ;
4A00            00115          ORG     4A00H
4A00 210000     00120 START    LD      HL,0        ;SOURCE
4A03 11003C     00130          LD      DE,3C00H    ;DESTINATION
4A06 010004     00140          LD      BC,1024     ;FULL SCREEN
4A09 EDA0       00150 LOOP1    LDI                 ;XFER ONE BYTE
4A0B E2144A     00160          JP      PO,NXT      ;GO IF OVER
4A0E CD284A     00170          CALL    SLOWLY      ;DELAY
4A11 C3094A     00180          JP      LOOP1       ;CONTINUE
4A14 1B         00190 NXT      DEC     DE          ;PNT TO LAST SCREEN
4A15 21FF07     00200          LD      HL,7FFH     ;NEW BLOCK
4A18 010004     00210          LD      BC,1024     ;STILL 1024 BYTES
4A1B EDA8       00220 LOOP2    LDD                 ;XFER BACKWARDS
4A1D E2264A     00230          JP      PO,DONE     ;GO IF DONE
4A20 CD284A     00240          CALL    SLOWLY      ;WHOA
4A23 C31B4A     00250          JP      LOOP2       ;CONTINUE
4A26 18FE       00260 DONE     JR      DONE        ;ENDLESS LOOP
4A28 3E80       00270 SLOWLY   LD      A,80H       ;TIMING CNT
4A2A 3D         00280 SLOW10   DEC     A           ;A-1 TO A
4A2B 20FD       00290          JR      NZ,SLOW10   ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A2D C9         00300          RET                 ;RETURN
0000            00310          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
SLOW10  4A2A
DONE    4A26
LOOP2   4A1B
SLOWLY  4A28
NXT     4A14
LOOP1   4A09
START   4A00
```

The first four instructions of this routine are identical to the code above. If the P/V bit is set, subroutine SLOWLY is

called before the next byte is transferred. When the last byte has been transferred, the P/V bit is reset and the jump is taken to NXT. At NXT the DE register is decremented to point to the last screen location; it held 4000H before the decrement. The address of the last location in the second 1024 bytes of ROM (7FFH) is put into HL as the first source address. At LOOP2 an LDD is used to transfer the data from 7FFH through 400H to the screen video memory, with the SLOWLY delay between each byte. Subroutine SLOWLY simply sets the immediate value 80H (128) into A and then decrements the count, looping until the count reaches zero. *Register A was used to hold the count as all other registers were dedicated to functions used by the LDI or LDD.*

To tie together some of the concepts we have explored in this chapter, we'll conclude with two general-purpose routines, FILL, a routine to fill any character in any sized-block in memory, and MOVE, a routine to move any block in memory anywhere else.

FILL Subroutine

The FILL subroutine is modeled after the one discussed earlier in this chapter. It is CALLed with certain registers loaded with *parameters* to be used for the fill.

(D) = Byte to be filled, any value
(HL) = Start of memory area to be filled
(BC) = Number of bytes to fill

Upon return from the subroutine, the contents of BC are zero, the fill byte remains in D, and HL points to the last byte filled plus one. The contents of A have been zeroed.

```
00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO FILL DATA IN MEMORY
00110 ;    ENTRY:(D)=DATA TO BE FILLED
00120 ;          (HL)=START OF FILL AREA
00130 ;          (BC)=# OF BYTES TO FILL
00140 ;          CALL   FILL
00150 ;    EXIT: (D)=SAME
00160 ;          (HL)=END OF FILL+1
00170 ;          (BC)=0
00180 ;          (A)=0
00190 ;
```

```
4A00            00200        ORG    4A00H
4A00 72         00210 FILL   LD     (HL),D     ;STORE BYTE
4A01 23         00220        INC    HL         ;BUMP POINTER
4A02 0B         00230        DEC    BC         ;ADJUST COUNT
4A03 78         00240        LD     A,B        ;GET MS OF COUNT
4A04 B1         00250        OR     C          ;MERGE LS COUNT
4A05 20F9       00260        JR     NZ,FILL    ;CONTINUE IF DONE
4A07 C9         00270        RET               ;RETURN IF DONE
0000            00280        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
FILL    4A00
```

MOVE Subroutine

The MOVE subroutine uses either an LDIR or an LDDR. The subroutine automatically checks to see whether the movement should be forward or backward. Ordinarily this is no problem, but when the source and destination blocks overlap, the reader can see that there is a conflict if the wrong direction is used; data will be destroyed before it has been moved to the new area. On entry into the subroutine, the following registers are set up.

(HL) = Start of source memory area
(DE) = Start of destination memory area
(BC) = Number of bytes to be moved

Upon return from the move, the contents of BC are zero, and the two other register pairs point to the last locations plus one.

```
                00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO MOVE MEMORY
                00110 ;   ENTRY: (HL)=SOURCE START
                00120 ;          (DE)=DESTINATION START
                00130 ;          (BC)=# OF BYTES TO MOVE
                00140 ;   EXIT: (HL)=SOURCE AREA+1
                00150 ;          (DE)=DEST AREA+1
                00160 ;          (BC)=0
                00170 ;
4A00            00180        ORG    4A00H      ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 E5         00190 MOVE   PUSH   HL         ;SAVE SOURCE PNTR
```

```
4A01 B7        00200       OR    A          ;CLEAR CARRY
4A02 ED52      00210       SBC   HL,DE      ;SOURCE-DEST PNTRS
4A04 E1        00220       POP   HL         ;RESTORE PNTR
4A05 DA0C4A    00230       JP    C,MOV10    ;GO IF MOVE BACK
4A08 EDB0      00240       LDIR             ;MOVE FORWARD
4A0A 1808      00250       JR    MOV20      ;GO TO RETURN
4A0C 09        00260 MOV10 ADD   HL,BC      ;POINT TO END+1
4A0D 2B        00270       DEC   HL         ;POINT TO END
4A0E EB        00280       EX    DE,HL      ;SWAP
4A0F 09        00290       ADD   HL,BC      ;POINT TO END+1
4A10 2B        00300       DEC   HL         ;POINT TO END
4A11 EB        00310       EX    DE,HL      ;SWAP BACK
4A12 EDB8      00320       LDDR             ;MOVE BACK
4A14 C9        00330 MOV20 RET              ;RETURN
0000           00340       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
MOV20   4A14
MOV10   4A0C
MOVE    4A00
```

Subroutine Format

FILL and MOVE follow the general format that will be used for subroutines in this book. All of the subroutines are assembled at 4A00H. To use them in other areas of memory it is generally mandatory to reassemble them with the proper ORG. Occasionally some of the subroutines will be *relocatable;* the subroutine would have identical machine code no matter what the origin. For this to be possible, the subroutine could not have direct addressing instructions such as JPs, CALLs, direct memory loads and stores, and so forth. In these cases the machine code could be moved without reassembly.

We will start building up a number of general-purpose subroutines in these chapters for the reader to use in his own programs. They'll be presented in the appropriate chapter and collected together in the last section of the book. FILL and MOVE are the first two of the lot.

Stack Operation

In the sample programs that we have been using up to this point we haven't been too concerned about the *stack.* The stack has been in use, however, and at this point it is best to pay some attention to it before it turns on us some day and devours some of our programs.

Every time we execute a CALL, RETurn, PUSH, or POP, we have been storing data into or removing data from the stack. For the sample programs here, we have been using the stack found in T-BUG, which is a short section of memory contained within the T-BUG program area. The stack *can* be located anywhere in RAM memory that we choose, however, as long as it does not conflict with any of our programs or data.

To recap what we learned about the stack in a previous chapter: The stack is an area of memory used to

Store return addresses for CALLs.
Store data when PUSHes are executed.
Store addresses when interrupts are active.

Addresses and data are *pushed* onto the stack, and the stack builds *downward* toward lower-numbered memory when this is done. A stack pointer register (SP) is adjusted to point to the *top of stack,* the location that has been used for the last CALL or PUSH storage. When a PUSH or CALL is performed, two bytes are pushed onto the stack and the SP register is decremented by two. When a POP or RETurn is performed, the two bytes are popped from the stack and the SP register is incremented by two to point to the next top of stack.

To see how this works, let us establish our own stack area and look at some of the stack actions. There is one instruction that loads tbe stack pointer with the first top of stack address, the LD SP,nnnn instruction. We will set aside 100 or so locations for the stack area starting at location 4AFFH, and building down to 4A9CH. The instruction to initialize this stack area is

```
LD   SP,4B00H   ;INITIALIZE STACK POINTER
```

The alert reader has discovered that *one more* than the actual top of stack address is used for initialization. The reason for this is that every PUSH or CALL first decrements the stack pointer *before* storing data. At any given time, then, the stack pointer points to the last byte stored, except for this case where no data has been stored at all.

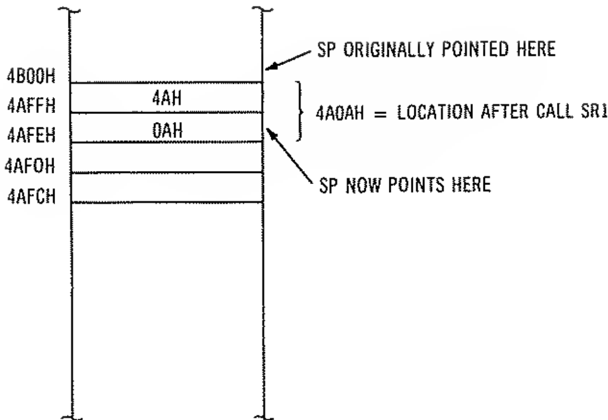


Fig. 6-3. Stack area Example 1.

When a CALL is executed, the address of the next instruction is stored in the stack with the most significant byte of the location stored in (SP)-1 and the least significant byte stored in (SP)-2. Let us illustrate this with a program. Key in the following code, set a breakpoint at LOOP, and then examine the stack area at 4AFFH down. You should see data as shown in Figure 6-3.

```
              00100 ;DEMONSTRATION OF STACK
              00110 ;
4A00          00120       ORG   4A00H
4A00 210000   00130       LD    HL,0       ;CLEAR HL
4A03 39       00140       ADD   HL,SP      ;LOAD SP
4A04 31004B   00150       LD    SP,4B00H   ;INITIALIZE STACK
4A07 CD0E4A   00160       CALL  SR1        ;CALL SUBROUTINE
4A0A F9       00170       LD    SP,HL      ;RESTORE OLD SP
4A0B C30B4A   00180 LOOP  JP    LOOP       ;LOOP HERE FOR BP
4A0E C9       00190 SR1   RET              ;A HUGE SUBROUTINE
0000          00200       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP   4A0B
SR1    4A0E
```

In the simple case above, the new stack area was used to store two bytes of the return address 4A and 0A in locations

4AFFH and 4AFEH, respectively. The stack pointer address used by T-BUG was saved in HL before the new stack area was initialized. When the short subroutine (the shortest possible subroutine) was executed and the RETurn made, the return address was retrieved from the stack and loaded into the program counter to cause the return to location 4A0AH. The LD SP,HL instruction restores the original stack pointer address used by T-BUG.

Nesting of subroutines can be used to any number of levels, just as GOSUBs in BASIC can cause nested subroutine action. As each new subroutine level is CALLed, the stack pointer is decremented further and further, and the return addresses are stored in lower and lower addresses in the stack. The program that follows shows how this works for four levels of subroutines. Breakpoint at LOOP, execute the program, and then examine the stack, starting at 4AFFH. It should correspond to Figure 6-4, and indicates that four separate return addresses were stored.

```
              00100 ;DEMONSTRATION OF STACK
              00110 ;
4A00          00120        ORG     4A00H
4A00 210000   00130        LD      HL,0        ;CLEAR HL
4A03 39       00140        ADD     HL,SP       ;LOAD SP
4A04 31004B   00150        LD      SP,4B00H    ;INITIALIZE STACK
4A07 CD0E4A   00160        CALL    SR1         ;CALL SUBROUTINE
4A0A F9       00170        LD      SP,HL       ;RESTORE OLD SP
4A0B C30B4A   00180 LOOP   JP      LOOP        ;LOOP HERE FOR BP
4A0E CD124A   00190 SR1    CALL    SR2         ;SECOND LEVEL
4A11 C9       00200        RET
4A12 CD164A   00210 SR2    CALL    SR3         ;THIRD LEVEL
4A15 C9       00220        RET
4A16 C9       00230 SR3    RET                 ;FOURTH LEVEL
0000          00240        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
SR3     4A16
SR2     4A12
LOOP    4A0B
SR1     4A0E
```

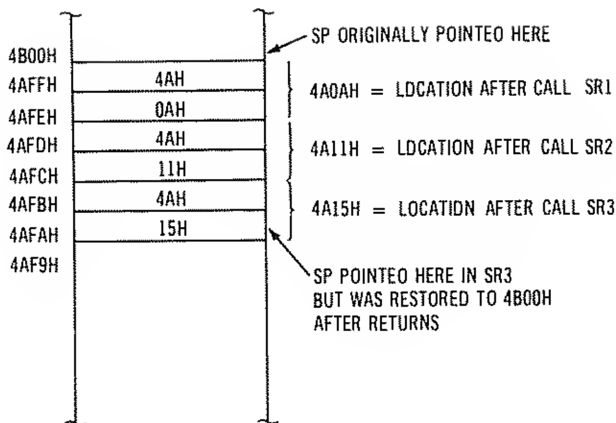


Fig. 6-4. Stack area Example 2.

When PUSHes or POPs are used, two bytes of data are also stored or retrieved in the stack, but the data represents data from cpu registers and not return addresses. When data is PUSHed, the high-order register is stored in (SP)-1 and the low-order register is stored in (SP)-2, in the same order that return addresses are stored (Figure 6-5). A third program following illustrates the storage action when CALLs and PUSHes are intermixed, as they will be in most programs.

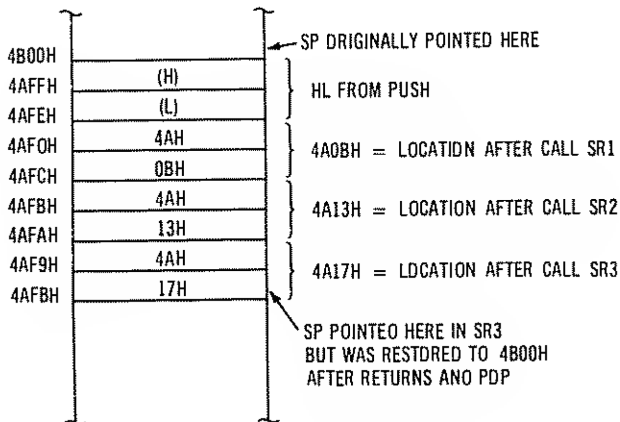


Fig. 6-5. Stack area Example 3.

```
                00100 ;DEMONSTRATION OF STACK
                00110 ;
4A00            00120        ORG     4A00H
4A00 210000     00130        LD      HL,0          ;CLEAR HL
4A03 39         00140        ADD     HL,SP         ;LOAD SP
4A04 31004B     00150        LD      SP,4B00H      ;INITIALIZE STACK
4A07 E5         00160        PUSH    HL            ;SAMPLE SAVE
4A08 CD104A     00170        CALL    SR1           ;CALL SUBROUTINE
4A0B D1         00180        POP     DE            ;SAMPLE RESTORE
4A0C F9         00190        LD      SP,HL         ;RESTORE OLD SP
4A0D C30D4A     00200 LOOP   JP      LOOP          ;LOOP HERE FOR BP
4A10 CD144A     00210 SR1    CALL    SR2           ;SECOND LEVEL
4A13 C9         00220        RET
4A14 CD184A     00230 SR2    CALL    SR3           ;THIRD LEVEL
4A17 C9         00240        RET
4A18 C9         00250 SR3    RET                   ;FOURTH LEVEL
0000            00260        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
SR3      4A18
SR2      4A14
LOOP     4A0D
SR1      4A10
```

Once the stack area has been defined by loading, the programmer need never worry about the stack and can indiscriminantly perform as many CALLs and PUSHes as he wishes, with a matching RETurn or POP for each CALL or PUSH. Generally, 30 or 40 bytes of RAM is large enough for even the most creative programmers; the number of nested subroutines is limited to 3 or 4 primarily by the problems in keeping the program in hand, just as in BASIC.

CHAPTER 7

Arithmetic and Compare Operations

This chapter will discuss the heart of any computer system —the ability to perform simple and complex arithmetic. In order to use the arithmetic capabilities of the Z-80, we will have to look in more detail at how numbers are represented in the architecture of the Z-80. After that chore, we'll build some routines to do adds and subtracts, decimal arithmetic, and other arithmetic-related processing.

Number Formats: Absolutely and Positively!

There are really three different ways to represent numbers in basic assembly-language routines used in the TRS-80, *absolute numbers*, *signed numbers*, and *binary-coded decimal*. (Another format, floating-point format, is too complex to describe in less than several chapters.) However, knowing the three formats just mentioned will enable the user to do virtually anything he wants in a TRS-80 processing routine.

In the previous chapters, we've been discussing numbers in absolute form, for the most part, although a few signed numbers have crept in when we discussed indexing and relative instructions. Absolute numbers are always positive; they can be looked at as "absolute-valued numbers." Earlier in the book we mentioned that in eight bits the binary values 00000000 through 11111111 could be held and that these represented 0 through 255 decimal. This still holds true (was there a collective sigh of relief?). Similarly, 16-bit numbers repre-

sent values from sixteen zeros to sixteen ones, or decimal 0 through 65535.

We also mentioned that binary numbers represented powers of two, and drew the parallel of the bit position in binary numbers representing powers of two, just as the decimal position in decimal numbers represents powers of ten. See Figure 7-1.

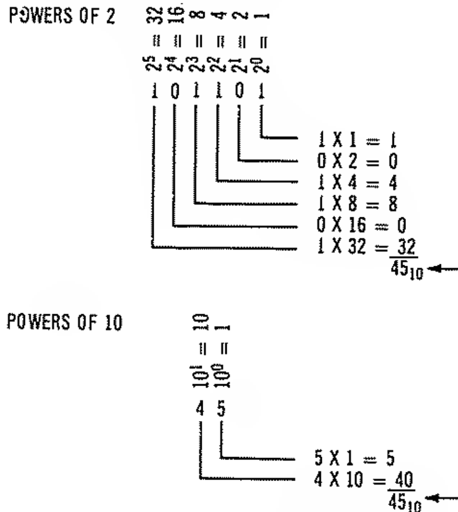


Fig. 7-1. Decimal versus binary numbers.

To convert any binary number to decimal, it is simply a matter of adding up all of the powers of two represented by one bits in the bit positions. Converting from decimal to binary can be done by inspection (what is the largest power of two that will go into this decimal number, what is the next, and so forth) or by reference to tables. See Figure 7-2.

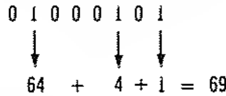
We have been working with *hexadecimal* numbers, which are really a shorthand way of representing binary numbers that have been grouped in 4-bit groups. Converting from hexadecimal to decimal can be done in the same fashion as binary; that is, finding the weight of the power of 16 represented, or by reference to tables, as can conversion of decimal numbers to hexadecimal. See Figure 7-3.

Absolute numbers in binary (hexadecimal) can be used to represent memory addresses, counts, or any quantity that will never be negative. In register indirect addressing we've used absolute numbers to represent memory locations in the HL and other register pairs. We've also used absolute numbers

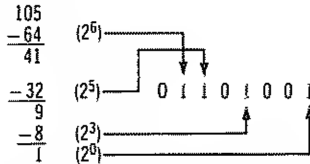
for counts or to represent the number of bytes to move in a block move. There are no negative numbers of bytes that must be moved, at least in this universe.

TO CONVERT FROM
BINARY TO OECIMAL

1. LIST POWERS OF TWO REPRESENTEO
2. ADO TO FIND DECIMAL NUMBER.



TO CONVEBT FROM
OECIMAL TO BINARY



1. SUBTRACT LARGEST POSSIBLE POWER OF TWO.
2. PUT A BINARY 1 IN THE APPROPRIATE BIT POSITION.
3. CONTINUE UNTIL 0 REMAINS.
4. FILL IN REMAINOER OF BIT POSITIONS WITH ZEROS.

Fig. 7-2. Decimal/binary conversions.

Signed Numbers

The same registers and memory locations that are used to hold absolute addresses can hold *signed numbers*. Many different types of signed formats could be used, but the one that the Z-80 and TRS-80 uses is the same type that most other computers use, and it's called *two's complement notation*.

In two's complement notation, the most significant bit of eight bits or sixteen bits is used to represent the sign of the number. If the *sign bit* is a *zero*, then the remainder of the number *is the same as an absolute number*. For example, if we had tbe two's complement number 00001000, then that number would be an 8, the same as the absolute number 00001000. The difference between absolute numbers and positive two's complement numbers, is that the most significant bit is always the sign, and that means that the maximum positive number that can be held in 8-bit two's complement

CONVERTING FROM BINARY TO DECIMAL AND BACK

1. GROUP BINARY # INTO 4-BIT GROUPS.

0101 1101 0011 0111

2. CHANGE EACH 4 BIT GROUP INTO A HEXADECIMAL DIGIT 0-9,A-F

5 D 3 7

REVERSE PROCESS TO CONVERT FROM HEX TO BINARY

CONVERTING FROM HEXADECIMAL TO DECIMAL

1. LIST POWERS OF 16 REPRESENTED.

$16^3 = 4096$ $16^2 = 256$ $16^1 = 16$ $16^0 = 1$

5 D 3 7

2. MULTIPLY BY DIGIT TO FIND DECIMAL.

4096 256 16 1

5 D 3 7

7 X 1 = 7
3 X 16 = 48
13 X 256 = 3328
5 X 4096 = 20480
23863

Fig. 7-3. Decimal/hexadecimal conversions.

notation is 01111111, or 127, about half of the maximum in absolute form (11111111 or 255). In sixteen bits the maximum positive number is 0111111111111111, or 32767 decimal.

Now here's the rub, as the Bard says in Much Ado About the TRS-80. When the sign bit is a one, the two's complement number represented is a negative number. When we see the two's complement number 10001000, we know from the sign bit that the number is negative. The question is, what negative number is it? The answer is *not* −8, even though it looks logical (all things in computers are not logical, in spite of the digital design). To find the actual negative number represented, we have to go through a purely rote procedure. It's not complicated, but it is tedious. In a negative two's complement number, to find the number represented, change all the ones to zeros, change all the zeros to ones, and add one. This process is demonstrated in Figure 7-4.

Why are negative numbers represented this way? To simplify hardware design. Next question . . . I'm afraid that's the way it is, TRS-80 programmers. Fortunately for us, the assembler takes care of constructing negative numbers and we generally don't have to be too concerned about manipulating them.

```
EXAMPLE 1:  FINO TWO'S COMPLEMENT OF 10001000

        10001000   NUMBER
        01110111   CHANGE ALL ONES TO ZEROS
                   ALL ZEROS TO ONES
        _____+ 1   AOO ONE
        01111000   THIS NUMBER NEGATED IS THE
                   ACTUAL NUMBER. IN THIS CASE
                   -120

EXAMPLE 2:  FIND TWO'S COMPLEMENT OF 11110000

        11110000   NUMBER
        00001111   CHANGE ALL ONES TO ZEROS
                   ALL ZEROS TO ONES
        _____+ 1   AOO ONE
        00010000   -16

EXAMPLE 3:  FIND TWO'S COMPLEMENT OF 01111111

        01111111   SIGN BIT IS + (0) AND NUMBER
                   IS CORRECT AS IT STANOS (+127)
```

Fig. 7-4. Two's complement notation.

If we start applying this process of reconverting negative numbers, we find that the smallest number in two's complement notation is 10000000, or −128, while the largest negative number is 11111111, or −1, for 8-bit values. Similarly, the range of negative numbers for 16-bit values is −32768 (1000000000000000) through −1 (1111111111111111). So, the range of *all* signed numbers that can be held in 8 bits is +127 through −128 and in 16 bits +32767 through −32768.

The nice thing about two's complement notation is that the Z-80 will automatically handle addition and subtraction of any combination of signs. In the days of double-precision BASIC variables that can be processed in just about any manner this may raise some reader's eyebrows, but things in assembly language *are* at the most basic computational level. About the only requirement is that the programmer must know something about the range of numbers he will be handling. In 8 bits one can get +127 and no more, and in 16 bits

the maximum is +32767. If more precision is required, the program will have to handle longer strings of eight bits in a *multiple-precision scheme.*

Let's see how the assembler handles representation of signed numbers. The program that follows shows a data table of various types of signed numbers, eigbt bits (DEFB) and 16 bits (DEFW). Note how the assembler automatically computes the proper two's complement form. Might we even suggest the odious task of looking at the arguments, converting a few numbers yourself, and then checking them against the assembled value? Like chicken soup, it won't hurt!

```
                00100 ;TABLE OF CONSTANTS
                00110 .
4000            00120          ORG     4000H
4000 00         00130          DEFB    0
4001 01         00140          DEFB    1
4002 FF         00150          DEFB    0FFH
4003 FE         00160          DEFB    0FEH
4004 7F         00170          DEFB    127
4005 0000       00180          DEFW    0
4007 FFFF       00190          DEFW    -1
4009 0100       00200          DEFW    1
400B FF7F       00210          DEFW    +32767
400D 0080       00220          DEFW    -32768
0000            00230          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
```

Note that the 16-bit values are in standard Z-80 representation, reversed so that the most significant byte is last and the least significant byte is first.

Adding and Subtracting 8-Bit Numbers

There are several actions that occur when two 8-bit signed numbers are added in the Z-80. First, the instruction adds the two operands and puts tbe result in the A register (initially, as you will recall, one of the operands was in A). In the course of adding tbe numbers, the carry flag, half carry flag, overflow flag, zero flag, and sign flag are all affected according to the results of the add.

The zero flag is set if the result is zero. The two instructions

```
LD      A,23     ;LOAD 23 INTO A
ADD     A,-23    ;ADD -23
```

would result in an A register result of zero and the zero flag set to a one. The carry flag is set if there is a carry out of bit position 7 after the add, and the half carry is set if there is a carry out of bit position 3. These carries are equivalent to decimal carries during an addition of two decimal numbers. The carry out of bit position 3 is the "half-carry" and is used for decimal addition of binary-coded-decimal operands discussed later on in this chapter. The "carry" out of the high-order bit position occurs whenever a carry is generated for the add, as in the add of 23 and −23.

```
          00010111     23
carry     11101001    -23  (try the two's complement)
          --------
  1       00000000      0  (zero result)
```

The carry flag can be used for adds of multiple bytes, for adds of bcd operands, or for certain types of compares.

The sign flag is really the duplication of the sign bit in the result after the add. If the result of the add is positive, the sign flag is reset (0), while if the result is negative, the sign flag is set (1). The sign flag can then be used for conditional jumps such as jump if result positive (JP P,aaaa) or jump if result negative (JP M,aaaa).

The overflow flag is used during adds and subtracts to detect *overflow* conditions. Overflow occurs when the result of the add is too large to fit into an 8-bit signed representation. Suppose that we are adding +127 and +50. We know that the maximum positive number that can fit in 8 bits is +127. What would the result be if we actually performed the add?

```
01111111   (+127)
00110010   (+ 50)
--------   ------
10110001   (- 79)   result — wrong!
```

As the reader can see from the example, the result of −79 is incorrect. If we had no way to detect the overflow, we might go merrily on our way printing a paycheck for an employee of $1,045,067.66, or an equally catastrophic action. Fortunately, the Z-80 *does* set overflow when the result is greater than +127 or less than −128.

When a subtract instead of an add is used, all of the above actions apply. The Z-80 performs the subtract just as you

would on paper, and then sets the flags according to the results of the subtract. There are really no fundamental differences between an add and subtract, as tbe reader can see if he considers adding +23 and −15 and then compares it to subtracting +15 from +23.

To illustrate the settings of the flag bits after an add or subtract, let's use T-BUG to execute some examples of arithmetic operations. Load T-BUG and key in the following program. Run the following examples by using T-BUG to change the operands in 4B00H and 4B01H, breakpoint at location 4A14H and then use the M command to look at the flags and results in locations 4B02H through 4B05H as shown in Table 7-1. In addition to the examples below the reader is urged to try his own values. The flags will have to be "decoded" from an 8-bit value to determine the state of tbe flags (it *is* some work, but you'll be a better programmer for it). The bit positions of the flag register are shown in Figure 7-5, and in Table 7-1.

```
              00100 ;PROGRAM TO ILLUSTRATE ARITHMETIC
              00110 ;
4A00          00120        ORG    4A00H
4A00 3A014B   00130        LD     A,(4B01H)    ;GET SOURCE
4A03 47       00140        LD     B,A          ;FOR OPERATION
4A04 3A004B   00150        LD     A,(4B00H)    ;GET DESTINATION
4A07 80       00160        ADD    A,B          ;ADD
4A08 F5       00170        PUSH   AF           ;TRANSFER FLAGS
4A09 E1       00180        POP    HL           ;GET RESULT FLAGS
4A0A 22024B   00190        LD     (4B02H),HL   ;STORE
4A0D 90       00200        SUB    B            ;RESTORE
4A0E 90       00210        SUB    B            ;SUBTRACT
4A0F F5       00220        PUSH   AF           ;TRANSFER FLAGS
4A10 E1       00230        POP    HL           ;GET RESULT, FLAGS
4A11 22044B   00240        LD     (4B04H),HL   ;STORE
4A14 C3144A   00245 LOOP   JP     LOOP         ;LOOP HERE FOR BP
0000          00250        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP   4A14
```

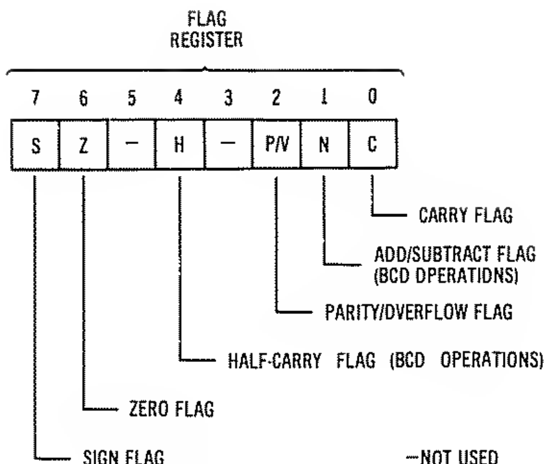


Fig. 7-5. Flag register bit positions.

Table 7-1. Examples of Add and Subtract Flag Bit

Location	Contents	Test Cases 1	2	3	4
4B00H	Dest Op	+33(21H)	−5(FBH)	−30(E2H)	120(78H)
4B01H	Source Op	+64(40H)	−30(E2H)	−5(FBH)	100(64H)
4B02H	Add Flags	00100000	10001001	10001001	10001100
4B03H	Add Result	+97(61H)	−35(DDH)	−35(DDH)	−24(DCH)
4B04H	Sub Flags	10100011	00001010	10110011	00000010
4B05H	Sub Result	−31(E1H)	+25(19H)	−25(E7H)	+20(14H)

FLAGS
S Z · H · P/V N C
7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Adding and Subtracting 16-Bit Numbers

The Z-80 allows two 16-bit operands to be added, as we found in a previous chapter. One of the operands must be in the HL, IX, or IY registers, analogous to the A register in 16-bit arithmetic; the second operand must be in one of the other register pairs. When an add or subtract is performed 16 bits at a time, the flags are affected in various ways, depending upon which of the 16-bit arithmetic instructions is being used. When an add is done to the IX register, for example, the zero and sign flags are not affected, but when an "ADC" is done with the HL register, the sign and zero flags *are* affected. When in doubt about flag action, consult the

individual flag action listed under tbe instruction in question in tbe Editor/Assembler manual.

The advantage of tbe 16-bit adds, of course, is that much larger numbers can be handled, at the expense of addressing versatility. Since tbe HL, IX, and IY registers are generally used as memory printer registers, the 16-bit adds and subtracts using these registers can be used to advantage to calculate memory addresses. As an example of this memory address computation capability, let's use tbe following program. This program uses 16-bit adds and subtracts to calculate memory addresses for movement of a dot across tbe video screen.

```
               00100 ;ROUTINE TO MOVE A DOT
               00110 .
4A00           00120       ORG   4A00H        ;START
4A00 21203C    00130       LD    HL,3C00H+32  ;START POSITION
4A03 114000    00150       LD    DE,64        ;INCREMENT
4A06 3E0F      00160       LD    A,15         ;NUMBER OF LINES
4A08 010800    00170       LD    BC,8         ;DELAY COUNT
4A0B 36FF      00180 LOOP1 LD    (HL),0FFH    ;ALL ON
4A0D 05        00200 LOOP2 DEC   B            ;DELAY CNT-1
4A0E 20FD      00210       JR    NZ,LOOP2     ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A10 0D        00220       DEC   C            ;DELAY COUNT
4A11 20FA      00230       JR    NZ,LOOP2     ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A13 3680      00240       LD    (HL),80H     ;ALL OFF
4A15 19        00250       ADD   HL,DE        ;NEXT ROW
4A16 3D        00260       DEC   A            ;#LINES-1
4A17 20F2      00270       JR    NZ,LOOP1     ;CONTINUE
4A19 18FE      00280 LOOP3 JR    LOOP3        ;LOOP HERE
0000           00290       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP3   4A19
LOOP2   4A0D
LOOP1   4A0B
```

The program starts by loading HL with the first position of tbe dot, tbe screen memory plus one-balf line. DE is loaded witb 64, representing tbe number that must be added to move

the dot to the middle of the next line. A is loaded with 15, the number of lines that tbe dot will move. BC is loaded with a delay count of 0, representing a delay of 65536 counts when BC is decremented in the loop. The action of the loop from LOOP1 through 4A17H is this: The dot is initially set on by outputting the graphic character 0BFH. This character sets every one of the six *pixels* in the character position. Now the program delays about ½ second by means of a 4 instruction delay loop. BC has zero at the end of the loop. After the delay the pixels are turned off by outputting the graphics character 80H. Then the next address is computed by adding the 64 in DE to HL, the address pointer. The contents of A are decremented by one. If 15 lines have not been reached, the program loops back to LOOP1.

There are several interesting things in the above program. Because the assembly-language code is extremely fast, we had to delay each time a dot (actually six dots) was moved to a new position. The delay count in BC was initialized to 0, and decremented by decrementing B back to 0 again (256 loops) as an *inner loop* and by decrementing C from 0 back to 0 as an *outer loop*. The reader should realize that at 4A13H, the count in BC is 0, in preparation for the next delay loop. Another point is that there is no way to decrement BC and test for zero, as the flags are not affected by a DEC BC. Hence two decrements are used, each one checking one of the two registers for zero—a DEC B or DEC C *does* set the flags after the decrement.

To illustrate the 16-bit subtract, we'll rewrite the program above to make a single pixel move from the bottom of the screen to the top of the screen. This program will be identical to the one above except that the starting position will be 3C00H+992, the 32nd character position in line 16, the increment in DE will be −64, and the graphics codes will specify all on or all off for a single pixel (we'll be looking at the graphics codes in more detail in a later chapter).

```
                00100 ;ROUTINE TO MOVE A DOT (BACKWARDS)
                00110 ;
4A00            00120         ORG     4A00H           ;START
4A00 21E03F     00130         LD      HL,3C00H+992    ;START POSITION
4A03 114000     00140         LD      DE,64           ;INCREMENT
4A06 3E0F       00150         LD      A,15            ;NUMBER OF LINES
```

```
4A08 010000    00160          LD    BC,0        ;DELAY COUNT
4A0B 3681      00170 LOOP1    LD    (HL),81H    ;ONE PIXEL ON
4A0D 05        00180 LOOP2    DEC   B           ;DELAY COUNT - 1
4A0E 20FD      00190          JR    NZ,LOOP2    ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A10 0D        00200          DEC   C           ;DELAY COUNT
4A11 20FA      00210          JR    NZ,LOOP2    ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A13 3680      00220          LD    (HL),80H    ;ALL OFF
4A15 B7        00230          OR    A           ;RESET CARRY
4A16 ED52      00240          SBC   HL,DE       ;NEXT ROW
4A18 3D        00250          DEC   A           ;#LINES-1
4A19 20F0      00260          JR    NZ,LOOP1    ;CONTINUE
4A1B 18FE      00270 LOOP3    JR    LOOP3       ;LOOP HERE
0000           00280          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP3   4A1B
LOOP2   4A0D
LOOP1   4A0B
```

The subtract was performed by the SBC instruction which subtracted the increment value of 64 from the current video memory position in HL. Note that before the subtract, an OR A was done. *The only reason for performing the* OR *A was to reset the carry flag.* The two questions that may immediately come to the readers mind are why use an OR A to reset the carry, and *why* reset the carry? The OR A is used because it is a short (one byte) and fast instruction. We could have reset the carry flag by an SCF followed by a CCF (set carry, complement carry), but the OR A does not affect the contents of the A register (try ORing any value with itself) and it is efficient.

Why do we want to reset the carry before the SBC? Well the SBC is actually a Subtract with Carry type instruction that not only subtracts a second operand from the contents of HL, but also subtracts the current state of the carry. That means that one more count might be subtracted from HL if the carry is set before the subtract. Since the carry is set and reset with many instructions, we have no way of knowing whether the carry will be set or reset before the SBC, and therefore *must* clear the carry to avoid subtracting a possible one from the result.

A Precision Instrument

The reason that the carry enters into some adds and subtracts on the TRS-80 is that the Z-80, like other microprocessors, is able to handle *multiple-precision* adds and subtracts. Remember that the maximum value that can be held in 8 bits is 255 and that the maximum value that can be held in 16 bits is 65535. What happens if we want more *precision* and want to hold larger numbers for adds and subtracts? How could we add 32-bit (four byte) numbers, for example, allowing us to work with values up to 4 billion or so (2^{32})?

Larger numbers are held in multiple-precision representation, which is simply a method for representing the numbers in as many bytes as required. If we know, for example, that a billion or so is the largest number we'll be working with, we can conveniently work with four-byte numbers in the Z-80. Suppose that we wanted to add two four-byte operands of +344,050 and +500,000, as shown in Figure 7-6. The numbers

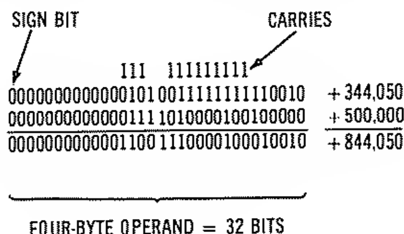


Fig. 7-6. Multiple-precision adds by manual methods.

are *signed* 32-bit operands, with the most significant bit representing the sign of plus (0) or minus (1) just as in the case of 8- or 16-bit operands. To add them with pencil and paper, we simply add the ones and zeros, and any carry from the lower bit positions as shown in the figure.

To add the numbers in the Z-80, we have a bit of a problem (32 bits of a problem, to be precise). We can add up to 16-bit operands, but how can we add 32 bits at a time? The answer is that the adds must be either four 8-bit adds or two 16-bit adds. Each of the adds must *add in* any carry from the last byte or two bytes, just as we do on pencil and paper operations. The following program adds two four-byte operands, representing the above values. The operands are in memory locations 4B00H-4B03H and 4B10H-4B13H and the result is stored in location 4B00H-4B03H. Key in the program using

T-BUG (or assemble and load), execute at 4A00H after breakpointing, and then check the result at 4B00H-4B03H. It should correspond with the result shown in Figure 7-7.

```
                00100 ;FOUR BYTE ADD ROUTINE
                00110 ;
4A00            00120        ORG    4A00H
4A00 DD21004B   00130 START  LD     IX,4B00H      ;DESTINATION
4A04 FD21104B   00140        LD     IY,4B10H      ;SOURCE
4A08 DD7E03     00150        LD     A,(IX+3)      ;GET BYTE 0
4A0B FD8603     00160        ADD    A,(IY+3)      ;ADD SOURCE
4A0E DD7703     00170        LD     (IX+3),A      ;STORE RESULT
4A11 DD7E02     00180        LD     A,(IX+2)      ;GET BYTE 1
4A14 FD8E01     00190        ADC    A,(IY+1)      ;ADD SOURCE
4A17 DD7702     00200        LD     (IX+2),A      ;STORE RESULT
4A1A DD7E01     00210        LD     A,(IX+1)      ;GET BYTE 2
4A1D FD8E02     00220        ADC    A,(IY+2)      ;ADD SOURCE
4A20 DD7701     00230        LD     (IX+1),A      ;STORE RESULT
4A23 DD7E00     00240        LD     A,(IX)        ;GET BYTE 3
4A26 FD8E00     00250        ADC    A,(IY)        ;ADD SOURCE
4A29 DD7700     00260        LD     (IX),A        ;STORE RESULT
4A2C C32C4A     00270 LOOP   JP     LOOP          ;LOOP HERE FOR BP
4B00            00280        ORG    4B00H         ;DESTINATION AREA
4B00 00         00290        DEFB   0             ;+344,050
4B01 05         00300        DEFB   5
4B02 3F         00310        DEFB   3FH
4B03 F2         00320        DEFB   0F2H
4B10            00330        ORG    4B10H         ;SOURCE AREA
4B10 00         00340        DEFB   0
4B11 07         00350        DEFB   7
4B12 A1         00360        DEFB   0A1H
4B13 20         00370        DEFB   20H
0000            00380        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP    4A2C
START   4A00
```

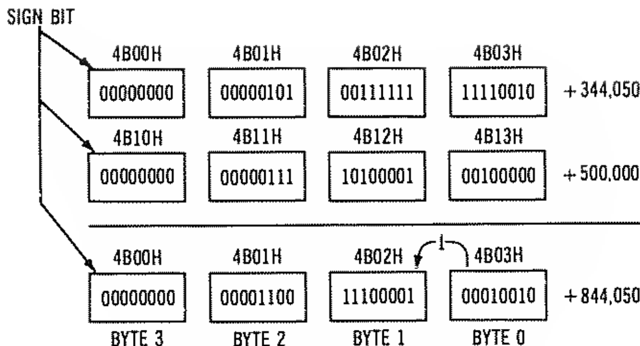


Fig. 7-7. Multiple-precision adds by machine.

The program uses indexed addressing with both IX and IY. The IX register points to the *destination* operand in 4B00H through 4B03H. Note that the most significant byte is at 4B00H and the last significant byte is at 4B03H. The IY register points to the *source* operand at 4B10H. Although the four adds could have been done in a loop, the in-line code in the program clearly shows the steps that must be taken for the adds. The first add adds (IX+3) and (IY+3), the least significant byte, and stores the result in 4B03H. After the ADD, the carry flag is set or reset dependent upon the carry from bit position 7, *which is not a sign bit, but just another bit position.* The next add (ADC) adds not only the two bytes from (IX+2) and (IY+2), but the *carry* from the previous add, which is undisturbed, as loads do not affect the carry or other flags. The next add adds in the carry from the second byte, and the last add adds in the carry from the third byte. All adds, except the first, added in a possible carry from the lower order byte. In the first add there was no preceding carry to be added in.

The program shows the general approach to add any number of bytes. There is no limit on the maximum number of bytes that could be used, but working with 32-byte operands might get somewhat tedious after a while. Floating-point format allows a more compact representation of large numbers, at the sacrifice of the number of significant digits, and is widely used in cases where very large, very small, or mixed numbers must be used.

Subtraction of multiple-precision numbers is handled in similar fashion. The first subtract would be an SUB without the carry, but the remaining three would be SBCs, which use the borrow from the preceding lower-order byte. A portion of this code is shown below.

```
LD    A,(IX+2)  ;SECOND BYTE
SBC   A,(IY+2)  ;SUBTRACT SOURCE
LD    (IX+2),A  ;STORE RESULT
```

There is no reason that 16-bit adds and subtracts couldn't be used, as long as the total number of bytes was a multiple of two. In the general case, 8-bit adds and subtracts are somewhat easier to work with, as they allow for an odd number of bytes and permit a direct add or subtract of the source operand (through HL, IX, or IY). The two programs shown below are general-purpose subroutines for multiple-precision adds and subtracts. They will handle any number of bytes required. Upon entry, IX and IY point to the first (most significant) bytes of the destination and source, respectively. The B register contains the number of bytes in the operands (both operands must have the same number of bytes). The subroutines add or subtract the source operand from the destination operand and put the result in the destination operand memory locations. Upon return from the subroutine IX and IY are unchanged and the contents of B are zero.

```
              00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO DO MULTIPLE-PRECISION ADDS
              00110 ;   ENTRY:(IX)=POINTS TO MS BYTE OF DESTINATION
              00120 ;         (IY)=POINTS TO MS BYTE OF SOURCE
              00130 ;         (B)=# OF BYTES IN OPERANDS
              00140 ;         CALL  MULADD
              00150 ;         (RETURN)
              00160 ;   EXIT:(IX)=UNCHANGED
              00170 ;        (IY)=UNCHANGED
              00180 ;        (A)=DESTROYED
              00190 ;        (B)=0
              00200 ;
4A00          00210        ORG    4A00H     ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 D5       00220 MULADD PUSH   DE        ;SAVE DE
4A01 58       00230        LD     E,B       ;#BYTES TO E
4A02 1600     00240        LD     D,0       ;DE NOW HAS #
4A04 1B       00250        DEC    DE        ;DE NOW HAS #-1
4A05 DD19     00260        ADD    IX,DE     ;POINT TO LS BYTE
4A07 FD19     00270        ADD    IY,DE     ;POINT TO LS BYTE
```

```
4A09 D1       00280        POP   DE        ;RESTORE ORIGINAL
4A0A AF       00290        XOR   A         ;RESET CARRY
4A0B DD7E00   00300 LOOP   LD    A,(IX)    ;GET DESTINATION
4A0E FD8E00   00310        ADC   A,(IY)    ;ADD SOURCE
4A11 DD7700   00320        LD    (IX),A    ;STORE RESULT
4A14 1001     00330        DJNZ  LOOP1     ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A16 C9       00340        RET             ;RETURN
4A17 DD2B     00350 LOOP1  DEC   IX        ;PNT TO NEXT HIGHER
4A19 FD2B     00360        DEC   IY        ;PNT TO NEXT HIGHER
4A1B C30B4A   00370        JP    LOOP      ;CONTINUE
0000          00380        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP1   4A17
LOOP    4A0B
MULSUB  4A00
```

```
              00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO DO MULTIPLE-PRECISION SUBTRACTS
              00110 ;   ENTRY:(IX)=POINTS TO MS BYTE OF DESTINATION
              00120 ;         (IY)=POINTS TO MS BYTE OF SOURCE
              00130 ;         (B)=# OF BYTES IN OPERANDS
              00140 ;         CALL  MULSUB
              00150 ;         (RETURN)
              00160 ;   EXIT:(IX)=UNCHANGED
              00170 ;        (IY)=UNCHANGED
              00180 ;        (A)=DESTROYED
              00190 ;        (B)=0
              00200 ;
4A00          00210        ORG   4A00H     ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 D5       00220 MULSUB PUSH  DE        ;SAVE DE
4A01 58       00230        LD    E,B       ;#BYTES TO E
4A02 1600     00240        LD    D,0       ;DE NOW HAS #
4A04 1B       00250        DEC   DE        ;DE NOW HAS #-1
4A05 DD19     00260        ADD   IX,DE     ;POINT TO LS BYTE
4A07 FD19     00270        ADD   IY,DE     ;POINT TO LS BYTE
4A09 D1       00280        POP   DE        ;RESTORE ORIGINAL
```

```
4A0A AF         00290         XOR    A          ;RESET CARRY
4A0B DD7E00     00300 LOOP    LD     A,(IX)     ;GET DESTINATION
4A0E FD9E00     00310         SBC    A,(IY)     ;SUBTRACT SOURCE
4A11 DD7700     00320         LD     (IX),A     ;STORE RESULT
4A14 1001       00330         DJNZ   LOOP1      ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A16 C9         00340         RET               ;RETURN
4A17 DD2B       00350 LOOP1   DEC    IX         ;PNT TO NEXT HIGHER
4A19 FD2B       00360         DEC    IY         ;PNT TO NEXT HIGHER
4A1B C30B4A     00370         JP     LOOP       ;CONTINUE
0000            00380         END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP1   4A17
LOOP    4A0B
MULSUB  4A00
```

Decimal Arithmetic

Up to this point we've been doing arithmetic operations with absolute and two's complement numbers. As we mentioned earlier in the chapter, there is a third type of arithmetic that is possible in the Z-80 and many other microprocessors, *binary-coded-decimal* (*bcd*) arithmetic. The bcd representation is a more direct translation from decimal than binary. To convert a decimal number into bcd, change each decimal digit into its 4-bit binary equivalent. Some exam-

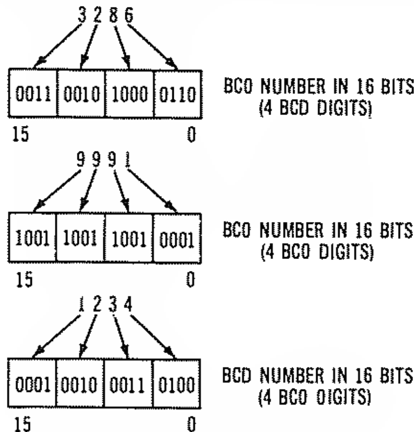


Fig. 7-8. The bcd representation.

ples of this are shown in Figure 7-8. After the conversion we're left with a *binarylike* number whose length equals four times the number of decimal digits, or to put it another way, two bcd digits in each 8-bit segment as shown in the figure.

The bcd representation is used for a variety of purposes. Much instrumentation uses bcd, especially instrumentation that displays digits in digital readout form, such as digital voltmeters and digital frequency counters. We could, of course, convert from bcd to binary, perform arithmetic operations in binary, and reconvert to bcd, but it is convenient to be able to directly add or subtract bcd values in the Z-80.

Adding or subtracting bcd is *not* the same as adding or subtracting binary numbers. Since the binary groups of 1010 through 1111 are not permitted in bcd (there is no bcd equivalent), operations in binary produce erroneous results, as

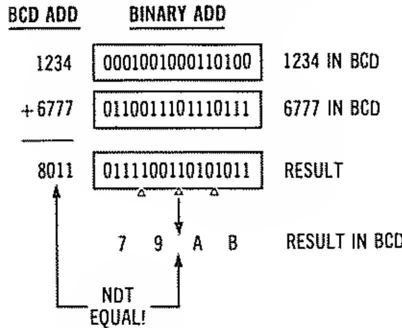


Fig. 7-9. A bcd add with erroneous result.

shown in Figure 7-9, where the bcd add of 1234 and 6777 produces 8011H and the binary add of the two numbers produces 79ABH. It turns out that to convert a binary result of the add of two bcd operands into bcd, it is only necessary to

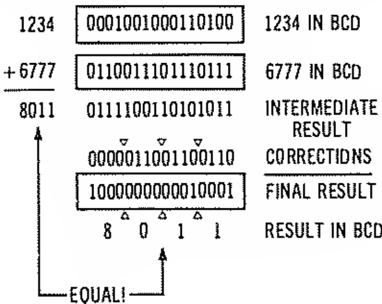


Fig. 7-10. Bcd corrections.

look at each of the groups of four bits to see whether or not a *correction* is required. If a 4-bit group in the result contains 1010, 1011, 1100, 1101, 1110, or 1111, or if a carry *from* the group resulted, then 0110 is added to the group to adjust the binary result to a bcd result. As every byte holds two bcd digits, two such checks are necessary for each binary byte. The process is shown in Figure 7-10, where corrections are made to the operands shown in Figure 7-9.

Bcd subtractions require the same adjustment, but in this case six is *subtracted* if necessary from a bcd digit in the result. It's relatively easy to implement a program to look at each bcd digit and test to see if an add or subtract adjustment is necessary, but the Z-80 does it all in one instruction, the DAA, or *D*ecimal *A*djust *A*ccumulator instruction. When bcd operands are being added or subtracted, the DAA is executed directly after the add or subtract to automatically (aren't computers wonderful) adjust the binary result to a bcd result. To see how this works, we'll write a program to count in bcd for 00 to 99 and compare the results with values stored from 00H through 63H in binary. The following program stores the bcd values from 00 through 99 into a buffer starting at 4B00H and stores a corresponding count from 0 through 99 in binary into a second buffer at 4C00H. Enter the program by assembling and loading or by using T-BUG to enter in machine language, breakpoint at END, and then compare the results in the two buffers. By "dumping" the bcd buffer using the M command in T-BUG (with carriage return), you will see a sequence of bcd numbers from 00, 01, 02, 03, 04, 05, 06, 07, 08, 09, 10, 11, up to 99.

```
               00100 ;PROGRAM TO DEMONSTRATE BCD
               00110 ;
4A00           00120       ORG   4A00H
4A00 110000    00130 START LD    DE,0       ;D=BCD;E=BINARY
4A03 DD21004B  00140       LD    IX,4B00H   ;BCD BUFFER
4A07 FD21004C  00150       LD    IY,4C00H   ;BINARY BUFFER
4A0B 0664      00160       LD    B,100      ;COUNT
4A0D DD7200    00170 LOOP  LD    (IX),D     ;STORE BCD
4A10 FD7300    00180       LD    (IY),E     ;STORE BINARY
4A13 DD23      00190       INC   IX         ;BUMP BCD POINTER
4A15 FD23      00200       INC   IY         ;BUMP BINARY POINTER
4A17 7A        00210       LD    A,D        ;GET BCD
```

```
4A18 C601     00220        ADD    A,1         ;ADD 1
4A1A 27       00230        DAA                ;DECIMAL ADJUST
4A1B 57       00240        LD     D,A         ;SAVE BCD VALUE
4A1C 7B       00250        LD     A,E         ;GET BINARY
4A1D C601     00260        ADD    A,1         ;ADD 1
4A1F 5F       00270        LD     E,A         ;SAVE BINARY VALUE
4A20 10EB     00280        DJNZ   LOOP        ;GO IF NOT 100
4A22 18FE     00290 LOOP1  JR     LOOP1       ;LOOP HERE IF DONE
0000          00300        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP1   4A22
LOOP    4A0D
START   4A00
```

Compare Operations

As we described in an earlier chapter, compares are essentially subtracts, where the result of the subtraction is only used to set the cpu flags and is not put into the destination register. Unlike subtracts, compares only operate with 8-bit operands, and one of the operands must be in the A register. Compares and subtracts may be used to test two operands for the same states as BASIC comparisons—tests for an operand greater than another, greater or equal, equal, not equal, less than or equal, or less than. Some of these tests are directly handled by the zero and sign flags, while others must use the carry flag.

The test for equality or non-equality is simple and uses the zero flag. In the following code a branch is made to NOTEQ if the contents of the A register are not equal to the contents of the B register and to EQUAL if the two registers are the same.

```
TEST  CP   B          ;TEST BY A-B
      JP   Z,EQUAL    ;GO IF A=B
      JP   NOTEQ      ;MUST BE A NE B HERE
```

When the two numbers to be compared are absolute (unsigned) numbers, the carry flag will be set after the compare if the contents of A are less than the second operand. If A holds 128 and the C register holds 130, for example, the branch to LESSTH will be taken in the code below.

```
TEST     CP     C          ;TEST A—C
         JP     C,LESSTH   ;GO IF A LESS THAN C
         JP     Z,EQUAL    ;GO IF A=C
GTHAN    ...               ;A GREATER THAN C HERE
```

When the two numbers to be compared are signed numbers, then the carry flag logic gets rather confusing. For this reason we present a general-purpose subroutine that compares two signed numbers and jumps to one of three locations based on a comparison of the operands. By making the branch locations identical, any combination of equality conditions may be constructed. If a branch is to be made on greater or equal, for example, the greater than branch will be to GTEQU and the equal branch will also be to GTEQU, with the less than branch to some other location.

```
              00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO COMPARE TWO 8-BIT SIGNED OPERANDS
              00110 ;   ENTRY:(A)=OPERAND 1
              00120 ;         (B)=OPERAND 2
              00130 ;         CALL   CMPARE        ;CALL IT
              00140 ;         (RTN FOR A LT B)     ;PUT JP  LESST HERE
              00150 ;         (RTN FOR A=B)        ;PUT JP  EQUAL HERE
              00160 ;         (RTN FOR A GT B)     ;PUT JP  GREATR HERE
              00170 ;   EXIT: (A)=UNCHANGED
              00180 ;         (B)=UNCHANGED
              00190 ;         (HL)=DESTROYED
              00200 ;
4A00          00210        ORG    4A00H          ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 E1       00220 CMPARE POP    HL             ;GET RTN ADDRESS
4A01 D5       00230        PUSH   DE             ;SAVE DE
4A02 110300   00240        LD     DE,3           ;ADDRESS INCREMENT
4A05 B8       00250        CP     B              ;COMPARE A:B
4A06 280A     00260        JR     Z,EQUAL        ;GO IF EQUAL
4A08 F5       00270        PUSH   AF             ;SAVE FLAGS
4A09 A8       00280        XOR    B              ;TEST SIGN BITS
4A0A 17       00290        RLA                   ;XOR TO C
4A0B DA154A   00300        JP     C,DIFFER       ;GO IF DIFFERENT SIGNS
4A0E F1       00310        POP    AF             ;RESTORE FLAGS
4A0F 3802     00320        JR     C,LESST        ;GO IF A LT B
4A11 19       00330 GREATR ADD    HL,DE          ;BUMP RTN BY 3
```

```
4A12 19        00340 EQUAL   ADD   HL,DE      ;BUMP RTN BY 3
4A13 D1        00350 LESST   POP   DE         ;RESTORE DE
4A14 E9        00360         JP    (HL)       ;RTN TO 0,3,6
4A15 F1        00370 DIFFER  POP   AF         ;RESTORE FLAGS
4A16 DA114A    00380         JP    C,GREATR   ;GO IF A GT B
4A19 C3134A    00390         JP    LESST      ;A LT B
0000           00400         END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
GREATR  4A11
LESST   4A13
DIFFER  4A15
EQUAL   4A12
CMPARE  4A00
```

The block compare is used in string searches and will be discussed in Chapter 9 when we look at strings and tables.

CHAPTER 8

Logical Operations, Bit Operations, and Shifts

The operations in this chapter differ from the arithmetic operations in the last chapter in that the operations here are all concerned with suhdivisions of hytes, either *fields* of a hyte or down to the individual hit level. The logical instructions are used to retrieve or store information in segments less than a hyte in length, the hit instructions manipulate individual hits in memory or register hytes, and the shifts align fields or manipulate individual hits.

AND, ORs, and Exclusive ORs

The AND instruction is used primarily to *mask out* unwanted data in hytes. Suppose, for example, that in each hyte of data in a tahle in memory we had an ASCII character representing the digits of 0 through 9. Now it turns out that the ASCII representation of those digits follows a rather logical order as the reader can see from Table 8-1. The ASCII representation of 0 is 30H, 1 is 31H, and so on up to 39H for 9. To convert one ASCII digit of 30H through 39H into a hinary value equivalent to the ASCII character, it is only necessary to get rid of the *bias* of 30H. This could he done hy suhtraction, hut an equivalent alternative would he to mask out the "3" portion of the ASCII hy an AND.

```
LD    A,ASCII   ;GET ASCII VALUE
AND   0FH       ;GET LAST FOUR BITS
```

When tbe ASCII values are masked by tbe immediate value 0FH (00001111), only the last four bits fall through, and since the least significant four bits are 0 through 9 in this case, the result is the equivalent binary value.

Tahle 8-1. ASCII Representation of Decimal and Hexadecimal

	Digit	ASCII Code
Oecimal	0	30H
	1	31H
	2	32H
	3	33H
	4	34H
	5	35H
	6	36H
	7	37H
	8	38H
	9	39H
Hexadecimal	A	41H
	B	42H
	C	43H
	D	44H
	E	45H
	F	46H

Conversely, a binary value of 0 througb 9 could be converted into an equivalent ASCII value for output by setting the "3" bits. Although an add could be used, the ASCII values could also be generated by an OR instruction.

```
LD   A,(BINARY)   ;GET BINARY VALUE
OR   30H          ;CONVERT TO ASCII
```

In botb of the preceding cases we have assumed that only valid ASCII characters of 0 through 9 are involved, and that the binary values will be 0 througb 9. As a simple illustration of this conversion, let's write out the screen line number 0 through 9, for the first ten lines of the screen. The following program does this by counting for 0 through 9 and ORing in the "3" value to make an ASCII digit out of the count.

```
                00100 ;WRITE OUT LINES 0-9 IN ASCII
                00110 ;
4A00            00120         ORG     4A00H
4A00 21203C     00130         LD      HL,3C00H+32      ;MIDDLE OF 1ST LINE
```

```
4A03 0600     00140          LD     B,0          ;INITIALIZE COUNT
4A05 0E39     00150          LD     C,39H        ;LAST ASCII
4A07 114000   00170          LD     DE,64        ;LINE INCREMENT
4A0A 78       00180 LOOP     LD     A,B          ;GET CURRENT COUNT
4A0B F630     00190          OR     30H          ;CONVERT TO ASCII
4A0D 77       00200          LD     (HL),A       ;STORE ON SCREEN
4A0E 19       00210          ADD    HL,DE        ;BUMP LINE PNTR
4A0F 04       00220          INC    B            ;BUMP COUNT
4A10 B9       00230          CP     C            ;TEST FOR END
4A11 C20A4A   00240          JP     NZ,LOOP      ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A14 C3144A   00250 LOOP1    JP     LOOP1        ;LOOP HERE AT END
0000          00260          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP1    4A14
LOOP     4A0A
```

The exclusive OR does not find as much use as the AND and OR instructions. Recall that the exclusive OR generates a one bit in the result if there is a single one bit but not two one bits in the bit positions of the two operands. The most common use of the exclusive OR in the TRS-80 is to zero the accumulator by the efficient instruction.

```
XOR   A   ;ZERO A REGISTER AND CARRY
```

Another use of the exclusive OR is to *toggle* a counter from 0 to 1 and back again as in

```
        LD    A,1      ;SET TOGGLE TO ONE
LOOP    XOR   1        ;TOGGLE
        JP    Z,ZERO   ;GO IF ZERO
        JP    ONE      ;ONE ACTION
```

One of the more common operations in the Z-80 and other computers is to set or reset a bit in a memory byte or register byte. To set a bit in memory in many computers, the following three instructions must be executed

```
LD   A,(HL)   ;LOAD THE MEMORY BYTE
OR   A,4      ;SET BIT 2
LD   (HL),A   ;STORE BYTE WITH BIT SET
```

Similarly, resetting any of the eight bits of a memory byte calls for

```
LD      A,(HL)    ;LOAD THE MEMORY BYTE
AND     A,0FBH    ;RESET BIT 2
LD      (HL),A    ;STORE BYTE WITH BIT RESET
```

Lastly, testing a bit of a memory location requires a load and test, usually an AND

```
LD      A,(HL)    ;LOAD THE MEMORY BYTE
AND     A,4       ;TEST BIT 2
JP      Z,ZERO    ;GO IF BIT 2 = 0
JP      ONE       ;BIT 2 = 1
```

Bit Instructions

In the Z-80 only one instruction is required to set, reset, or test any one bit of a memory or cpu register bit. The instruction SET 2,(HL) takes the place of the three instructions for setting a bit, RES 2,(HL) causes a reset of bit 2, and BIT 2,(HL) sets the zero flag to the condition of the bit. Since these sets, resets, and tests are continually being done in assembly language programming, the bit instructions are quite powerful.

Shiftless Computers

It is possible to perform the actions of aligning data, dividing and multiplying by powers of two, and bit testing without shift instructions, but the Z-80 shifts are much more efficient than other shiftless instruction sets, and make these common operations much easier to perform.

Often shifts are used to align data, that is, to move fields within bytes to a desired location. The Z-80 shift instructions for data alignment are the *Rotate* instructions. Rotates are either 8-bit rotates or 9-bit rotates. The 8-bit rotates move the 8 bits within a register or memory location out one end and in the other, as shown in Figure 8-1. The 9-bit rotates rotate the carry along with the 8 register or memory data bits. Both types of rotates have their uses.

Rotates

As an example of use of rotate, let's write a routine that will output the contents of a block of memory locations in binary. Each memory location has eight bits, of course, and we must convert each bit to an ASCII one or zero for display. The following code outputs locations 0 through 0FH to the screen in binary ASCII.

```
                00100 ;ROUTINE TO DUMP IN BINARY
                00110 ;
4A00            00120       ORG   4A00H
4A00 DD21203C   00130 START LD    IX,3C00H+32   ;MIDDLE OF LINE 0
4A04 FD21004B   00140       LD    IY,4B00H      ;START OF DUMP LOC
4A08 113800     00150       LD    DE,56         ;LINE INCREMENT
4A0B 0610       00160       LD    B,16          ;LINE COUNT
4A0D D9         00170 LOOP1 EXX                 ;SWITCH REGISTERS
4A0E 0608       00180       LD    B,8           ;BIT COUNT
4A10 3E30       00190 LOOP2 LD    A,30H         ;ASCII 0
4A12 FDCB0006   00200       RLC   (IY)          ;ROTATE LEFT
4A16 3001       00210       JR    NC,LOOP3      ;GO IF 0
4A18 3C         00220       INC   A             ;CHANGE 0 TO 1
4A19 DD7700     00230 LOOP3 LD    (IX),A        ;STORE 0 OR 1
4A1C DD23       00235       INC   IX            ;NEXT CHARACTER POSTN
4A1E 10F0       00240       DJNZ  LOOP2         ;GO IF NOT 8 BITS
4A20 D9         00250       EXX                 ;SWITCH BACK
4A21 FD23       00260       INC   IY            ;BUMP LOCATION PNTR
4A23 DD19       00270       ADD   IX,DE         ;POINT TO NEXT LINE
4A25 10E6       00280       DJNZ  LOOP1         ;GO IF NOT 16 LOCNS
4A27 18FE       00290 LOOP4 JR    LOOP4         ;LOOP HERE ON DONE
0000            00300       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP4   4A27
LOOP3   4A19
LOOP2   4A10
LOOP1   4A0D
START   4A00
```

This is our most complicated program thus far, and it bears some detailed study. The IX register is used to point to the current screen line, starting at the middle of the first line. The IY register is used to point to the location to be *dumped*, in this case starting at 4B00. DE holds the line increment to be added to IX to point to the next display line. Since we're going to be writing out 8 ASCII bytes on each line, the increment on

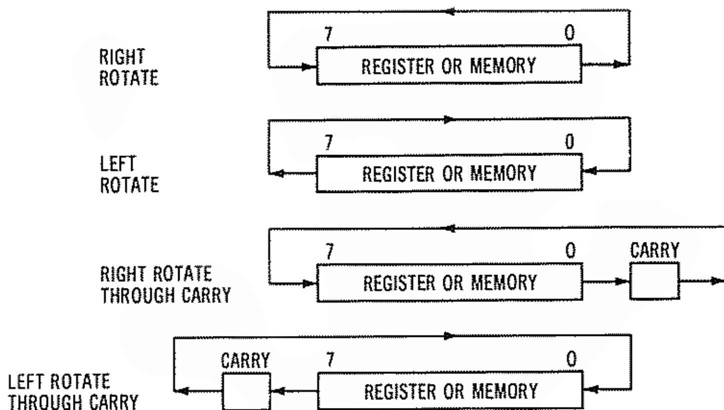


Fig. 8-1. Rotate operation.

this is (64-8) or 56. B is initialized with the number of locations to be dumped or 16.

The main loop in the code starts at LOOP1. The first instruction swaps the inactive and active set of cpu registers B through L. This is done to enable us to use more cpu registers since just about every one is in use. Now we can use B of the second set to hold a bit count for the inner loop of 4A10 through 4A1F that looks at the 8 bits and outputs them in ASCII to the screen. The inner loop rotates the location pointed to by IY. As each rotate is done, the leftmost bit is rotated both to the carry and around to the right-hand side of the memory location. The carry is tested to store either a 30H, for an ASCII zero, or 31H, for an ASCII one. Eight rotates are done, and at the end the memory location in the 4B00H area has been rotated completely around.

For each store of an ASCII one or zero, IX is incremented to point to the next character position on the line. When the count in B is decremented down to zero, an EXX switches back the cpu registers, restoring the original count in B for number of lines. IY is incremented to point to the next memory location in the 4B00H area, and IX is incremented by 56 to point to the next line for display. If 16 locations have not been dumped, the next location is stored as eight ASCII characters.

A program that has several nested loops such as this can be confusing to a programmer seeing it for the first time. It can also be confusing to the programmer who wrote it when he picks it up several months later! One convenient way to get a clear picture of what is going on in a program such as this is to "play computer." On a sheet of paper, make columns rep-

resenting the registers that are in use in the program. Then step through the program one instruction at a time, filling in the proper values in the registers. It isn't necessary to loop all the way through some of the loops (65536 loops makes for a lot of writing), but it does make many programs very clear. See Figure 8-2.

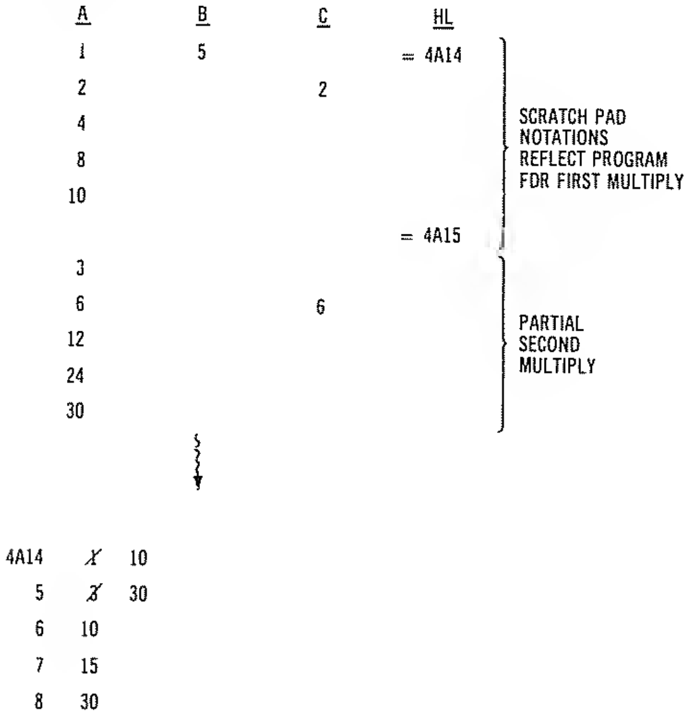
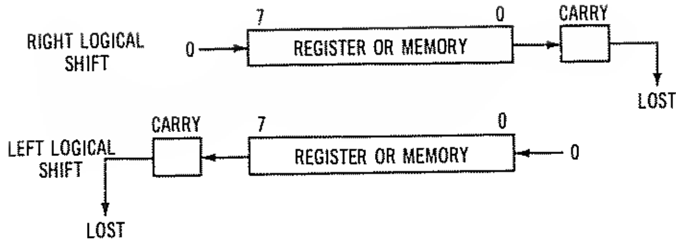


Fig. 8-2. Playing computer.

Some Shifting Is Very Logical

Logical shifts differ from rotates in that data shifted off the end of the register or memory location is lost. Zeros are used to shift into the byte from the other end, as shown in Figure 8-3. Logical shifts are used to align data as in the rotate case, and to divide or multiply by two. If an 8-bit value is shifted left one bit, the effect is to multiply the original value by two while a shift right of one bit position divides the original value by two and discards the remainder.



	SAMPLE RIGHT LOGICAL SHIFT		SAMPLE LEFT LOGICAL SHIFT	
ORIGINAL NUMBER	01010000	(80_{10})	00001011	(11_{10})
1 SHIFT	00101000	(40_{10})	00010110	(22_{10})
2 SHIFTS	00010100	(20_{10})	00101100	(44_{10})
3 SHIFTS	00001010	(10_{10})	01011000	(88_{10})
4 SHIFTS	00000101	(5_{10})	10110000	(-80_{10})!
5 SHIFTS	00000010	(2_{10})	01100000	(96_{10})!
6 SHIFTS	00000001	(1_{10})	11000000	(-64_{10})!
7 SHIFTS	00000000	(0)	10000000	(-128_{10})!

Fig. 8-3. Logical shift operation.

All rotates, logical shifts, and arithmetic shifts in the Z-80 operate only one bit at a time, so that a shift of four bit positions requires four separate shifts. To show how shifts may be used to multiply, consider the following code. Multiplication by ten is a common problem in many programs. For example, keyboard values may be input in ASCII and represent a string of decimal digits, such as 567.89, that must be converted to binary values for arithmetic manipulations within the program. MULTEN takes an 8-bit value from memory, multiplies it by ten, and stores it back into the memory location.

```
               00100 ;MULTIPLY BY TEN ROUTINE
               00110 ;
4A00           00120        ORG   4A00H
4A00 21154A    00130 MULTEN LD    HL,DATA    ;TABLE OF DATA
4A03 0605      00140        LD    B,5        ;FOR FIVE VALUES
4A05 7E        00150 LOOP   LD    A,(HL)     ;GET VALUE
4A06 CB27      00160        SLA   A          ;VALUE*2
4A08 4F        00170        LD    C,A        ;SAVE VALUE*2
```

```
4A09 CB27      00180          SLA    A          ;VALUE*4
4A0B CB27      00190          SLA    A          ;VALUE*8
4A0D 81        00200          ADD    A,C        ;VALUE*10
4A0E 77        00210          LD     (HL),A     ;RESTORE
4A0F 23        00220          INC    HL         ;POINT TO NEXT VALUE
4A10 10F3      00230          DJNZ   LOOP       ;CONTINUE
4A12 C3124A    00240 LOOP1    JP     LOOP1      ;LOOP HERE IF DONE
4A15 01        00250 DATA     DEFB   1
4A16 03        00260          DEFB   3
4A17 0A        00270          DEFB   10
4A18 0F        00280          DEFB   15
4A19 1E        00290          DEFB   30
0000           00300          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP1   4A12
LOOP    4A05
DATA    4A15
MULTEN  4A00
```

After the value is loaded into the A register it is shifted left by the SLA A to multiply the value hy two. This value is then saved in the C register. Now the A register is shifted left two more times to multiply the original value by four and eight. Now the value in the C register, which represents the original value times two, is added to the value times eight to give a result of the value times ten. Execute the program with a hreakpoint at 4A12 and then look at the table locations to see the results. Note that the multiply was an unsigned (absolute) multiply, and that in one case (30), the result was too large for the 8-hit memory location. In this case only the lower-order eight hits of the result are in the memory location!

Arithmetic Shifts

The TRS-80 has one shift that is an arithmetic-type shift (even though the mnemonic for the SLA is *S*hift *L*eft *A*rithmetic it is really a logical shift). The SRA (*S*hift *R*ight *A*rithmetic) always retains the *sign* of the operand to be shifted as shown in Figure 8-4. The hit in hit 7 is shifted right to hit 6,

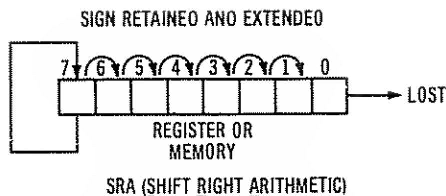


Fig. 8-4. Arithmetic shift operation.

but also goes back into bit 7 as tbe sign. The process is called *sign extension* as the sign is extended to the right. The SRA may be used to divide a signed 8-bit operand by two. The operation for a value of −37 is shown in Figure 8-5.

Software Multiply and Divide

What! No multiply and divide instructions in the Z-80! That's right, and no current 8-bit microprocessor has tbem eitber. Before you pull out that weathered four-function calculator, let's see how multiply and divide can be implemented in software.

There are a number of approaches in writing a multiply routine for any computer. The easiest is repetitive addition. Mulplying 63 by 15 is really only adding 63 to itself 14 times

	MEMORY OR REGISTER	
ORIGINAL NUMBER	1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1	-37_{10}
AFTER 1 SHIFT	1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1	-19_{10}
AFTER 2 SHIFTS	1 1 1 1 0 1 1 0	-10_{10}
AFTER 3 SHIFTS	1 1 1 1 1 0 1 1	-5_{10}
AFTER 4 SHIFTS	1 1 1 1 1 1 0 1	-3_{10}
AFTER 5 SHIFTS	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0	-2_{10}
AFTER 6 SHIFTS AND N > 6 SHIFTS	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	-1_{10}

Fig. 8-5. Arithmetic shift example.

(or adding 15 63 times), and that's very easy to implement in the Z-80. The following routine uses this approach to multiply the 16-bit absolute value in DE hy an 8-hit *multiplier* in B, which is also unsigned or absolute. The product is in HL at completion (use the R command to see the product).

```
              00100 ;REPETITIVE ADDITION MULTIPLY
              00110 ;
4A00          00120       ORG    4A00H
4A00 ED5B114A 00130 START LD     DE,(ARG1)    ;LOAD MULTIPLICAND
4A04 3A134A   00140       LD     A,(ARG2)     ;LOAD MULTIPLIER
4A07 47       00150       LD     B,A          ;TRANSFER TO B
4A08 210000   00160       LD     HL,0         ;CLEAR PARTIAL PRODUCT
4A0B 19       00170 LOOP  ADD    HL,DE        ;ADD MULTIPLICAND
4A0C 10FD     00180       DJNZ   LOOP         ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A0E C30E4A   00190 LOOP1 JP     LOOP1        ;LOOP HERE ON DONE
4A11 E803     00200 ARG1  DEFW   1000         ;PUT MULTIPLICAND HERE
4A13 1400     00210 ARG2  DEFB   20           ;PUT MULTIPLIER HERE
0000          00230       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP1  4A0E
LOOP   4A0B
ARG2   4A13
ARG1   4A11
START  4A00
```

As short and sweet as this routine is, it does have a serious disadvantage. It is horrendously slow, compared to other ways in which the multiply could he implemented. Use this approach only when the multiplier is small. It is efficient when multipliers of ten or less will be used.

The usual way of implementing a software multiply is to use the same approach as the pencil and paper method for decimal numbers. In this approach a shifted multiplicand multiplied hy the digit in the multiplier is added to other partial products to get the final product as shown in Figure 8-6. Binary multiplication using this technique is fairly simple as the value to be added can *only be* the multiplicand or zero, depending upon the value of the multiplier bit. The following

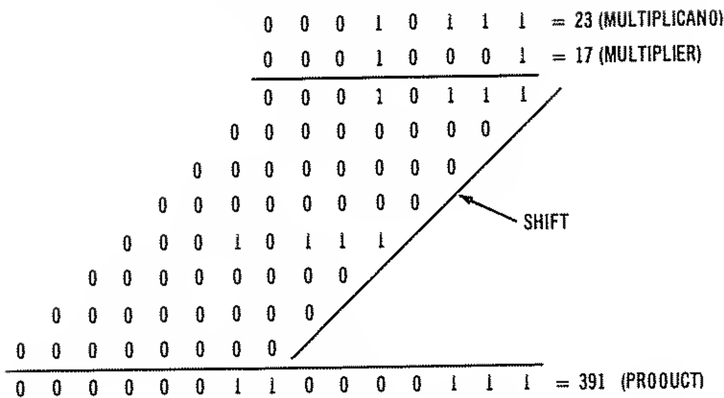


Fig. 8-6. Multiplication methods.

routine is one of the "standard" routines that might be helpful in the user's programs. It multiplies an *unsigned* 16-bit value in DE by an *unsigned* 8-bit value in the B register and returns the product in HL. The B register contents is zero upon return.

```
                00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO MULTIPLY 16 BY 8
                00110 ;   ENTRY: (DE)=MULTIPLICAND,UNSIGNED
                00120 ;          (B)=MULTIPLIER,UNSIGNED
                00130 ;          CALL  MUL16
                00140 ;   EXIT:  (HL)=PRODUCT
                00150 ;          (DE)=DESTROYED
                00160 ;          (B)=0
                00170 ;
4000            00180       ORG   4000H      ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4000 210000     00190 MUL16 LD    HL,0       ;CLEAR PARTIAL PRODUCT
4003 CB38       00200 LOOP  SRL   B          ;SHIFT OUT M'IER BIT
4005 3001       00210       JR    NC,CONT    ;GO IF NO CARRY (1 BIT)
4007 19         00220       ADD   HL,DE      ;ADD MULTIPLICAND
4008 C8         00230 CONT  RET   Z          ;GO IF M'IER
4009 EB         00240       EX    DE,HL      ;MULTIPLICAND TO HL
400A 29         00250       ADD   HL,HL      ;SHIFT MULTIPLICAND
400B EB         00260       EX    DE,HL      ;SWAP BACK
```

```
4A0C C3034A   00270        JP     LOOP          ;CONTINUE
0000          00280        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
CONT    4A08
LOOP    4A03
MUL16   4A00
```

Note that in the above routine the ADD HL,DE *does not* affect the zero flag, allowing it to be used for a check on the shifted result in B *after* the add.

Divide routines implemented in software are not nearly so neat. Experienced programmers have been known to wail and gnash their teeth while trying to implement an efficient divide routine on certain computers. Successive subtraction may be used, but it is as slow as a multiply routine using this approach, and should be used only with operations resulting in small quotients. The following code divides the contents of the HL register, an *unsigned* 16-bit number by the contents of DE, an unsigned 16-bit *divisor*. Both numbers must be less than 32,768. The quotient is in B at the end, and any remainder is in HL. If the quotient is larger than 255 overflow will result.

```
               00100 ;DIVIDE BY SUCCESSIVE SUBTRACTION
               00110 ;
4A00           00120        ORG    4A00H
4A00 2A1A4A    00130 START  LD     HL,(ARG2)      ;GET DIVISOR
4A03 E5        00140        PUSH   HL             ;TRANSFER TO DE
4A04 D1        00150        POP    DE
4A05 2A184A    00160        LD     HL,(ARG1)      ;DIVIDEND
4A08 0600      00170        LD     B,0            ;CLEAR QUOTIENT
4A0A B7        00180 LOOP   OR     A              ;CLEAR CARRY FOR SUBTR
4A0B ED52      00190        SBC    HL,DE          ;DIVIDEND-DIVISOR
4A0D FA144A    00200        JP     M,DONE         ;GO IF DONE
4A10 04        00210        INC    B              ;BUMP QUOTIENT
4A11 C30A4A    00220        JP     LOOP           ;CONTINUE
4A14 19        00230 DONE   ADD    HL,DE          ;FIND TRUE REMAINDER
4A15 C3154A    00240 LOOP1  JP     LOOP1          ;LOOP HERE ON DONE
4A18 204E      00250 ARG1   DEFW   20000          ;ARG1/ARG2
4A1A C800      00260 ARG2   DEFW   200
```

```
0000          00270        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP1   4A15
DONE    4A14
LOOP    4A0A
ARG1    4A18
ARG2    4A1A
START   4A00
```

In the routine the divisor is repeatedly subtracted from the dividend until the dividend goes negative. When this occurs, the *residue* is changed to a true remainder by adding back the divisor. Each time the subtraction can be successfully made the contents of B are incremented by one to show the quotient. This method exactly emulates what can be done with pencil and paper.

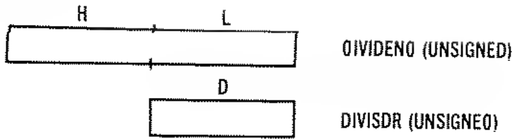
A more general-purpose divide for an unsigned 16-bit dividend and unsigned 8-bit divisor is shown in the following "standard" subroutine. Here the division is a *restoring* type similar to a paper and pencil approach. Instead of asking itself "Does the divisor go into the next group of digits," however, the computer in this case blindly goes ahead and attempts the divide. If the divisor doesn't go, then the previous residue is *restored* by adding back the shifted dividend, similar to what was done in the successive subtraction case.

```
              00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO DIVIDE 16 BY 8
              00110 ;   ENTRY:(HL)=DIVIDEND 16 BITS
              00120 ;         (D)=DIVISOR 8 BITS
              00125 ;         CALL  DIV16
              00130 ;   EXIT: (IX)=QUOTIENT 16 BITS
              00140 ;         (H)=REMAINDER 8 BITS
              00150 ;         (L)=DESTROYED
              00160 ;         (D)=UNCHANGED
              00170 ;         (E)=0
              00180 ;         (A)=DESTROYED
              00190 ;
4A00          00200       ORG   4A00H     ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 7D       00210 DIV16 LD    A,L       ;LS BYTE DIVDND
4A01 6C       00220       LD    L,H       ;MS BYTE DIVDND
```

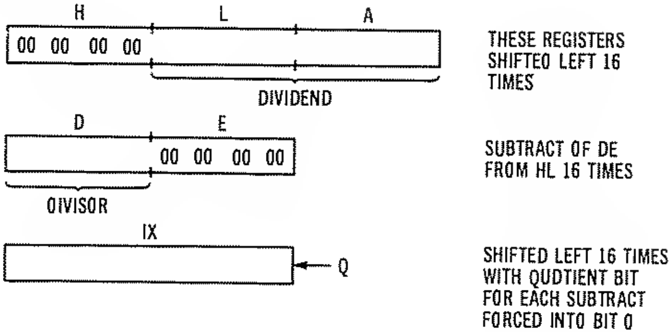
```
4A02 2600     00230       LD     H,0         ;CLEAR FOR SUBT
4A04 1E00     00240       LD     E,0         ;SETUP FOR SUBTRACT
4A06 0610     00250       LD     B,16        ;16 ITERATIONS
4A08 DD210000 00260       LD     IX,0        ;INITIALIZE QUOTIENT
4A0C 29       00270 LOOP  ADD    HL,HL       ;SHIFT DIVD LEFT
4A0D 17       00280       RLA                ;SHIFT 8 LS BITS
4A0E D2124A   00290       JP     NC,LOOP1    ;GO IF 0 BIT
4A11 2C       00300       INC    L           ;SHIFT TO HL
4A12 DD29     00310 LOOP1 ADD    IX,IX       ;SHIFT QUOTIENT LEFT
4A14 DD23     00320       INC    IX          ;Q BIT=1
4A16 B7       00330       OR     A           ;CLEAR CARRY FOR SUB
4A17 ED52     00340       SBC    HL,DE       ;TRY SUBTRACT
4A19 D21F4A   00350       JP     NC,CONT     ;GO IF IT WENT
4A1C 19       00360       ADD    HL,DE       ;RESTORE
4A1D DD2B     00370       DEC    IX          ;SET Q BIT=0
4A1F 10EB     00380 CONT  DJNZ   LOOP        ;GO IF NOT 16
4A21 C9       00390       RET                ;RETURN
0000          00400       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
CONT    4A1F
LOOP1   4A12
LOOP    4A0C
DIV16   4A00
```

The register setup before and after the divide is shown in Figure 8-7. The divisor in D is repetitively subtracted from the residue of the dividend in HL. The residue is shifted over one bit position for every iteration just the way it is done by the paper and pencil method. If the subtract for any *iteration* is successful, a one bit is left in the quotient; if the subtract is not successful a zero bit is put in the quotient. The quotient is shifted left one bit for every iteration as less and less significant subtracts are made. After 16 bits the IX register holds the possible 16-bit quotient, the H register holds an 8-bit remainder, D holds the original divisor, and E is zeroed. One interesting point is that both the HL and IX registers are effectively shifted left one bit position in a logical shift by adding HL or IX to themselves. It may benefit the reader to actually play computer on this routine and step through the 16 iterations of the divide while using actual numeric values.

BEFORE CALLING DIV16



BEFORE DIVIDE OPERATION



AFTER DIVIDE

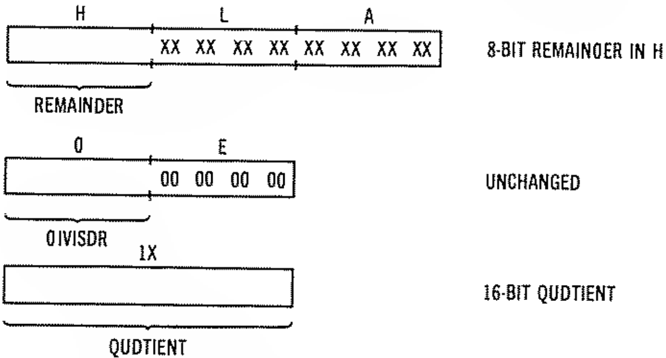


Fig. 8-7. Divide register setup.

At the end you may vow never to do it again, but it will give some insight into this type of operation.

The preceding multiply and divide routines are *unsigned* multiplies and divides. It is possible to implement *signed* multiplies and divides, but they are not as neatly packaged as the unsigned. The unsigned routines may be used to implement a signed multiply or divide if the operands are changed to their absolute values and the results changed again to their proper signs. However, watch for overflow conditions when this approach is used, such as multiplying −128 by −128!

Input and Output Conversions

The techniques of shifting, multiplications, and divides that we covered in this chapter are very useful in conversion between internal data representation and ASCII. Most programs require some type of input of ASCII data from keyboard, usually in decimal, and that string of decimal digits must be converted into an eight, sixteen, or larger number of bits so that the program can process the data. Sometimes, as in the case of T-BUG, there must be a way of converting from a *hexadecimal* ASCII input to eight or sixteen bits, and infrequently, a way of converting ASCII *binary* into internal data values. Similarly, once the data has been processed, it must be displayed in a more convenient form, which usually means ASCII decimal, but which may also be hexadecimal (in the T-BUG case) or binary.

We have already covered one conversion in an earlier program in this chapter, the conversion of eight bits into equivalent ASCII ones or zeros for display. The conversion of

```
                00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO CONVERT FROM HEX TO ASCII
                00110 ;
                00120 ;  ENTRY:(A)=8-BIT VALUE TO BE CONVERTED
                00130 ;        CALL   HEXCV
                00140 ;        (RETURN)
                00150 ;  EXIT: (HL)=TWO ASCII VALUES, HIGH AND LOW
                00160 ;        (A)=DESTROYED
                00170 ;        (C)=DESTROYED
                00180 ;
4A00            00190          ORG    4A00H          ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 4F         00200 HEXCV    LD     C,A            ;SAVE TWO HEX DIGITS
4A01 CB3F       00210          SRL    A              ;ALIGN HIGH DIGIT
4A03 CB3F       00220          SRL    A
4A05 CB3F       00230          SRL    A
4A07 CB3F       00240          SRL    A
4A09 CD154A     00250          CALL   TEST           ;CONVERT TO ASCII
4A0C 67         00260          LD     H,A            ;SAVE FOR RTN
4A0D 79         00270          LD     A,C            ;RESTORE ORIGINAL
4A0E E60F       00280          AND    0FH            ;GET LOW DIGIT
```

```
4A10 CD154A    00290        CALL    TEST            ;CONVERT TO ASCII
4A13 6F        00300        LD      L,A             ;SAVE FOR RTN
4A14 C9        00310        RET
4A15 C630      00320 TEST   ADD     A,30H           ;CONVERSION FACTOR
4A17 FE3A      00330        CP      3AH             ;TEST FOR 0-9
4A19 FA1E4A    00340        JP      M,TEST1         ;GO IF 0-9
4A1C C607      00350        ADD     A,7             ;CORRECT FOR A-F
4A1E C9        00360 TEST1  RET                     ;RETURN
0000           00370        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
TEST1   4A1E
TEST    4A15
HEXCV   4A00
```

hexadecimal values to ASCII digits of 0 through 9 and A through F is a similar problem. Let's write a program to convert any number in the A register into two hexadecimal ASCII digits. We will also write a simple *driver* to use the program and display some data.

Program HEXCV is the general-purpose routine to perform the conversion. The first four bits, representing the first hexadecimal digit are shifted 4 hit positions right in the A register. They are now aligned in the A register, and the register holds a value of from 0000 through 1111 (the upper four hits are zero), representing hexadecimal 0 through F. The ASCII equivalents for 0 through F are shown in Table 8-1. Unfortunately, there is a "gap" hetween the digits 0 through 9 and the characters A through F. If there were no gap, 30H could be added to the four bits to compute the ASCII value for the character. Since there is a gap, however, there must be a test for the hexadecimal letter digits, and this is done in the compare. If the conversion resulted in a result greater than 39H, then the ASCII character must be a letter, and 7 is added to ohtain the letter value. For the second (least significant) hexadecimal digit, the A register is restored, the upper four bits are *masked out* (the lower four are already aligned) and the same conversion is made. Upon completion, HL holds the two ASCII characters representing the hexadecimal digits.

A simple *driver* to test this routine could he constructed from something similar to the following code.

```
        LD      B,8         ;8 LINES
        LD      IX,3C00H    ;FIRST LINE
        LD      DE,xxxx     ;LOCATIONS TO DISPLAY
LOOP    LD      A,(DE)      ;GET LOCATION
        CALL    HEXCV       ;CONVERT
        LD      (IX),H      ;STORE 1ST CHARACTER
        LD      (IX+1),L    ;STORE 2ND CHARACTER
        INC     IX          ;BUMP POINTER
        INC     IX
        INC     DE          ;BUMP LOCATION POINTER
        DJNZ    LOOP        ;CONTINUE IF NOT 8
```

A driver in this case means a routine to test and exercise the HEXCV routine. This driver displays 8 locations on line 1 of the video display in a string of 16 hexadecimal digits. The reader can undoubtedly see how different formats could be constructed to display hexadecimal data in a more convenient format by using HEXCV and other types of drivers.

Converting input data from ASCII to binary or hexadecimal is about as easy as the output conversion. For binary, the ASCII character representing a binary one or zero is converted to a true binary one or zero by subtracting 30H. This bit is then aligned and merged with other bits representing the 8- or 16-bit input value. Hexadecimal ASCII characters are adjusted by subtraction of 30H. If the result is greater than 9, a second subtract of 7 is performed to convert the letter digit to A through F in hexadecimal. The 4-bit result is merged with a second result or three other results to produce an 8-bit or 16-bit value.

Conversion of decimal data is the most difficult of the three types of cenversions. It is not simply a case of shifting bits as is the case in binary and hexadecimal.

For a conversion of decimal input data, each ASCII character represents a decimal digit from 0 through 9 (30H tbrough 39H). The ASCII character is cbanged to four bits of bcd by subtracting 30H. Now this result must be multiplied by the power of ten it represents. For example, if tbe ASCII string was 123, the one would be converted to a bcd 1 and multiplied by 100, the 2 would be converted and multiplied by 10, and tbe 3 would only be converted. In practice decimal input conversion routines work with five digits as 65,535 can be beld in 16 bits, and use a combination of conversion of each of the digits and multiplication of the result by ten for five iterations to convert the data.

For output conversions, an 8- or 16-bit value is converted by division by ten, the resulting remainders adjusted to an ASCII cbaracter by addition of 30H, and tbe result

stored in an intermediate buffer before output. Anotber approach is to use successive subtractions of the powers of ten, starting witb 10000 (for a 16-bit value) to convert tbe number into decimal values whicb can then be converted by addition of 30H to ASCII outputs.

CHAPTER 9

Strings and Tables

This chapter discusses two important aspects of assembly-language programs, strings and tables. Strings are generally strings of text characters, just as in BASIC programs. Many assembly-language programs are concerned with separating segments of the string into various fields representing subdivisions of the string data such as names, addresses, mnemonics, and so forth. The Z-80 has a powerful block search capability to help in handling strings. Tables are generally one-dimensional arrays that represent such diverse things as addresses for jumps, sine values, and withholding tax percentages. The Z-80 has many features that permit the assembly-language programmer to work with tables, such as indexing.

Assembler-Generated Strings

We have seen in an earlier chapter how the assembler automatically generates a text string when the DEFM pseudo-op is used. Generally, this pseudo-op is used to produce messages which are output to the display or printer. The code below, for example, outputs a message to the middle of the screen, after the message has been converted from a symbolic source line into ASCII by the assembler.

```
                00100 ;ROUTINE TO OUTPUT MESSAGE
                00110 ;
4A00            00120           ORG     4A00H
```

```
4A00 210E4A   00130 START   LD      HL,MESS          ;LOAD ADDRESS OF MESS
4A03 11203E   00140         LD      DE,3C00H+544     ;MIDDLE LINE+32
4A06 011100   00150         LD      BC,MESSL         ;LENGTH OF MESS
4A09 EDB0     00160         LDIR                     ;OUTPUT TO SCREEN
4A0B C30B4A   00170 LOOP    JP      LOOP             ;LOOP HERE ON DONE
4A0E 41       00180 MESS    DEFM    'ANOTHER FINE MESS'
4A0F 4E       4A10 4F       4A11 54       4A12 48       4A13 45       4A14 52
    4A15 20       4A16 46       4A17 49       4A18 4E       4A19 45       4A1A 2
0       4A1B 4D       4A1C 45       4A1D 53       4A1E 53       0011          00
165 MESSL   EQU     $-MESS
0000          00190         END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP    4A0B
MESSL   0011
MESS    4A0E
START   4A00
```

The program uses the block move LDIR after setting up the register pairs for the parameters of the move. Note that the length of the message has been *generated by the assembler* by equating an assembly variable MESSL to the next assembler location minus the start of the message. When the BC register pair is loaded with MESSL, the assembler loads the immediate field of the load instruction with the length of 11H.

Generalized String Output

In the case above, the message could be moved to the output device in a block, as the output device was really a memory area. If your system has a printer that operates through a parallel or serial port on the TRS-80, the way that an output string is sent to the printer is somewhat different. Let's suppose that subroutine OUTPUT actually communicates with the printer (we'll talk about that communication in the next chapter). The subroutine below CALLs OUTPUT with the next ASCII character to be transmitted to the printer. The problem here is to determine when to stop. Initially, the MESSGE subroutine is called with HL holding the start of the message area. However, we need not only the start of the message area, but the end of the message area, the number of

bytes in the message, or some other means to signal the MESSGE subroutine that the message has come to an end. MESSGE here uses a *terminator* approach to detect the end of the message. The next character is sent to the OUTPUT subroutine as long as a *null* (all zeros) character is not detected. If a null is detected, MESSGE knows that the message area has come to an end and returns to the calling subroutine. A length could have been specified to MESSGE, but the terminator approach is used quite frequently.

```
                00100 ;MESSAGE OUTPUT ROUTINE
                00110 .
4A00            00120        ORG    4A00H
4A00 7E         00130 START  LD     A,(HL)     ;LOAD NEXT CHARACTER
4A01 B7         00140        OR     A          ;TEST FOR NULL
4A02 C8         00150        RET    Z          ;RETURN ON ZERO
4A03 CD0050     00160        CALL   OUTPUT     ;OUTPUT TO PRINTER
4A06 23         00170        INC    HL         ;POINT TO NEXT CHAR
4A07 18F7       00180        JR     START      ;CONTINUE
5000            00190 OUTPUT EQU    5000H      ;PRINTER OUT ROUTINE
0000            00200        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
OUTPUT   5000
START    4A00
```

In many cases, the message to be output to the screen or I/O device must first be assembled during program execution. In these cases, a *message buffer* area is allocated, and the component parts of the message are moved into the area, and the message is then printed. The approach is valuable for printing variable data that cannot be defined beforehand, and for saving memory when a large number of messages must be printed. In the code below, a message buffer for a mailing list has been defined. The *fields* of the buffer are defined by symbolic names and the execution time assembly can be done by transferring ASCII data to the proper fields.

```
                00100 ;MAILING LIST PRINT LINE
                00110 .
4A00            00115        ORG    4A00H
```

```
4A00          00117 LABEL  EQU   $     ;START OF LABEL BUFFER
4A00          00120 NAME   EQU   $     ;20 CHAR NAME HERE
0014          00130        DEFS  20    ;RESERVE 20
4A14          00140 STREET EQU   $     ;22 CHAR STREET HERE
0016          00150        DEFS  22    ;RESERVE 22
4A2A          00160 CITY   EQU   $     ;15 CHAR CITY HERE
000F          00170        DEFS  15    ;RESERVE 15
4A39          00180 STATE  EQU   $     ;2 CHAR STATE HERE
0002          00190        DEFS  2     ;RESERVE 2
4A3B          00200 ZIP    EQU   $     ;5 CHAR ZIP HERE
0005          00210        DEFS  5     ;RESERVE 5
4A40 00       00220        DEFB  0     ;NULL TERMINATOR
0000          00230        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
ZIP     4A3B
STATE   4A39
CITY    4A2A
STREET  4A14
NAME    4A00
LABEL   4A00
```

String Input

When strings are input from either the TRS-80 keyboard or from another type of I/O device, an *input buffer* is allocated to hold the string of characters in much the same way as the output message buffer is defined at assembly time. The problem with input of strings is not how to detect the end of the string, but to limit the number of input characters so that the space allocated for the input buffer is not exceeded. In the code below, the subroutine INPUT is called to input one character from an external keyboard. INPUT handles all of the communication between the TRS-80 in regard to *status* and transmission of the character. The input text string in ASCII is stored into INMESS, starting at 4B00H. The INPTMS routine is exited when either a carriage return (0DH) or 64 characters has been input. Terminating the routine at 64 characters guarantees that the message buffer will not overflow, possibly overwriting program code adjacent to it.

```
            00100 ;MESSAGE INPUT ROUTINE
            00110 ;
4A00        00120        ORG    4A00H
4A00 21104A 00130 INPTMS LD     HL,INMESS   ;START OF INPUT BUFFER
4A03 0640   00140        LD     B,64        ;MAXIMUM # OF CHARACTERS
4A05 CD004B 00150 LOOP   CALL   INPUT       ;GET ONE CHARACTER
4A08 FE0D   00160        CP     0DH         ;TEST FOR CARRIAGE RTN
4A0A C8     00170        RET    Z           ;RETURN IF CR
4A0B 77     00180        LD     (HL),A      ;STORE IN BUFFER
4A0C 23     00190        INC    HL          ;BUMP POINTER
4A0D 10F6   00200        DJNZ   LOOP        ;CONTINUE IF NOT 64
4A0F C9     00210        RET                ;64 CHARACTERS
0040        00212 INMESS DEFS   64
4B00        00213 INPUT  EQU    4B00H       ;TERMINAL INPUT
0000        00220        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
INPUT  4B00
LOOP   4A05
INMESS 4A10
INPTMS 4A00
```

Once the string has been stored in the input buffer, of course, it must be separated into fields representing different types of data, as in tbe case of tbe mailing list line defined earlier. Conversion from ASCII data into decimal, hexadecimal, and otber number representations must be performed. We've covered some of tbe conversion tecbniques for numbers earlier, but let us look at processing of the text strings tbat will be in the input message and may be carried through the entire processing of the program witbout being reformatted. The block move instructions allow shuffling of the strings from one place in memory to another, but the block search instructions perform an equally important task, comparison of one text string to another.

Block Compares

Tbe block compare instructions, CPD, CPI, CPIR, and CPDR, search a block of memory (string) for a given char-

acter. If the character is found, the *location* of the character is returned. Since the search can be done in one instruction for the CPIR and CPDR, the search process is much faster on the Z-80 tban on equivalent microprocessors. Let us see how the block compares operate. Suppose that we have just input a line of mailing list information using the INPTMS routine. The information input was in the format

JOHN J. PROGRAMMER/32768 OVERFLOW ST./COMPUTERTON/CA/92677

Here the fields of the mailing list information were separated by special characters called *delimiters*, which could have been any character normally not used in the text. To use the CPIR to search the input line for the next delimiter, the HL register pair is set up witb the start of the message area, the BC register pair is set up with the number of bytes to be searched, and the A register is loaded with the character for which the search is to be done. The code below shows the initialization and the CPIR.

```
LD      HL,INMESS   ;INPUT MESSAGE START
LD      BC,64       ;64 CHARACTERS TO BE SCANNED
LD      A,'/'       ;SEARCH FOR SLASH
CPIR                ;PERFORM SEARCH
```

At the end of the search, the Z flag will be set if the character has been found, or reset if tbe character was not found in the entire block of memory. If the character *was* found, the HL register points to the location of the character *plus one*, and the HL register must, therefore, be decremented to point to the actual cbaracter. An actual example of this search would be the code below. Assemble and load using T-BUG, or key in using T-BUG, execute the program, and then display the registers using the R command. The Z flag should be set, and the HL register pair should contain 4A11H, the location of the slash plus one.

```
                00100 ;ROUTINE TO SEARCH FOR SLASH
                00110 ;
4A00            00120        ORG    4A00H
4A00 210D4A     00130 START  LD     HL,INMESS    ;START OF MESSAGE AREA
4A03 010600     00140        LD     BC,6         ;# OF CHARACTERS TO SCAN
4A06 3E2F       00150        LD     A,'/'        ;SEARCH CHARACTER
4A08 EDB1       00160        CPIR                ;SEARCH
4A0A C30A4A     00170 LOOP   JP     LOOP         ;LOOP HERE ON DONE
4A0D 31         00180 INMESS DEFM   '123/ME'     ;MESSAGE
```

```
4A0E 32       4A0F 33       4A10 2F       4A11 4D       4A12 45       0000
   00190          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP   4A09
INMESS 4A0D
START  4A00
```

The CPID works similarly to the CPIR, except that the CPID searches the string from end to beginning. In this case the HL register pair points to the character found minus one byte for the location. The HL register pair must be set up to the end of the string area in the CPID case.

```
        LD      HL,INMESS+63    ;INPUT MESSAGE END
        LD      BC,64           ;64 CHARACTERS TO BE SCANNED
        LD      A,'/'           ;SEARCH FOR SLASH
        CPDR                    ;SEARCH FOR SDRAWKCAB
        JP      Z,FOUND         ;GO IF FOUND
        . . .                   ;NOT FOUND HERE
```

The CPI and CPD instructions require the same setup as the CPIR and CPID, respectively. They operate in similar fashion to the block move instructions in that only one iteration is done at a time. The instruction then pauses so that additional operations can be performed. Suppose, for example, we wished to search for two characters in the search. The following code would do that by a CPI-type search. After each iteration the Z flag would be set if the search character was found, and the P/V flag would be set if the byte count in BC was counted down to zero and the search was over. In this case, if the Z flag is set the first character was found and a check is made for the second character, as the HL register pair now points to a location one past the found character. If the second character does not match, then the search is continued until the end. Upon completion the HL register pair should point to 4A1EH in this case.

```
                00100 ;ROUTINE TO SEARCH FOR '/*'
                00110 ;
4A00            00120        ORG     4A00H
4A00 211B4A     00130 START  LD      HL,INMESS    ;START OF MESSAGE
4A03 010600     00140        LD      BC,6         ;# OF BYTES TO SEARCH
4A06 3E2F       00150 LOOPA  LD      A,'/'        ;SLASH FOR FIRST CHAR
4A08 EDA1       00160 LOOP   CPI                  ;SEARCH ONE BYTE
```

```
4A0A 2806     00170          JR     Z,MAYBE      ;GO IF FIRST FOUND
4A0C EA084A   00180          JP     PE,LOOP      ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A0F C30F4A   00190 LOOP1    JP     LOOP1        ;LOOP HERE NOT FOUND
4A12 3E2A     00200 MAYBE    LD     A,'*'        ;SECOND CHAR
4A14 BE       00210          CP     (HL)         ;COMPARE
4A15 C2064A   00220          JP     NZ,LOOPA     ;NO MATCH
4A18 C3184A   00230 LOOP2    JP     LOOP2        ;LOOP HERE IF FOUND
4A1B 23       00240 INMESS   DEFM   '#$/*()'     ;MESSAGE
4A1C 24       4A1D 2F        4A1E 2A     4A1F 28     4A20 29     0000
    00250          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP2   4A18
LOOP1   4A0F
MAYBE   4A12
LOOP    4A08
LOOPA   4A06
INMESS  4A1B
START   4A00
```

Searches for greater than one character may be done in this manner by searching for the first character using the search character in A for the CPI or CPD, and then searching the remainder of the string one byte at a time if there is a match on the first byte.

Table Searches

Tables are used extensively in all types of assembly-language programs. One of the simplest table types is a table of unordered or random data. The tahle is searched for a specific piece of data and the position in the table, or its *index*, is then used to access other information or simply as data itself.

Suppose, for example, that we have a table consisting of one-letter commands for T-BUG as shown in Figure 9-1. (In fact, this table is a kind of text string, as it is made up of ASCII characters.) We would like to see if we can find a given one letter command that has heen input from the TRS-80 keyboard, match it up with a table entry, find the index, and then use that index to get the address of the routine to process that command in T-BUG.

The first thing that we must do is a table search, which in this case is exactly the same as the string search we performed under the string operations.

```
START  LD    HL,TABLE    ;TABLE START
       LD    BC,9        ;# OF BYTES
       LD    A,(INPUT)   ;GET INPUT CHARACTER
       CPIR              ;SEARCH
```

In the above code A was loaded with the input character from the keyboard, a one-letter ASCII command. At the end of the LDIR search Z will be set if the character was found and HL will then point to the character in the table plus one location. If the table is set up as in Figure 9-1, then HL will contain

TABLE	7 — 0	
4A10H	'B'	BREAKPOINT
4A11	'F'	RESTORE
4A12	'G'	CONTINUE
4A13	'J'	JUMP
4A14	'L'	LOAD CASSETTE
4A15	'M'	MEMORY DISPLAY
4A16	'P'	WRITE CASSETTE
4A17	'R'	DISPLAY REGISTERS
4A18	'X'	EXIT

Fig. 9-1. Sample table of T-BUG commands.

location 4A11H through 4A19H if the character was found and location 4A19H (with zero reset) if the character was not found. We can find the *index* of the command in the table by subtracting the value of table from the value in HL if the character was found.

```
JP    NZ,NFND    ;GO IF CHARACTER NOT FOUND
LD    BC,TABLE   ;START OF TABLE
OR    A          ;CLEAR CARRY FOR SUBTRACT
SBC   HL,BC      ;FIND INDEX
```

At the end of the code above, L will contain the index of 1 through 9. If "INPUT" was a G, for example, L will contain a 3, indicating that G was the third entry in the table, counting from the *zeroth* entry. Now that we have the index, what do we do with it? Well, we can now use that index to *index into* another table of jumps corresponding to the routines that process each of the T-BUG commands. The relationships of the two tables are shown in Figure 9-2.

In the case of the first command table, the *entries* of the table were one byte long, each byte being an ASCII character representing the command. In the address table, however, each

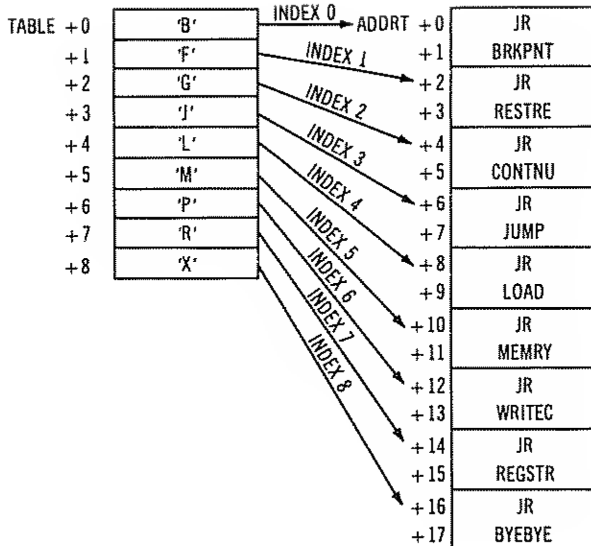


Fig. 9-2. Indexing into tables.

entry is two bytes long, since a relative jump must be represented. We now need to change that index from the first table into a *displacement* value that will pick up the right address table entry, the displacement being the number of physical bytes from the beginning of the address table. (The displacement for the first table was one times the index, but the displacement in the second table is two times the index.) The following code accomplishes this after first decrementing the index to adjust for the way the CPIR leaves the HL register.

```
OEC   HL       ;FINO TRUE INOEX
SLA   L        ;INOEX TIMES TWO
EX    OE,HL    ;SWAP OE ANO HL
LO    HL,AOORT ;JUMP TABLE LOCATION
ADD   HL,OE    ;HL NOW HAS LOCATION OF JUMP
JP    (HL)     ;JUMP OUT TO JUMP
```

In the short tables here this code is not the most efficient (it took about 14 instructions to get to the routine), but the reader can see that this is a good approach for very long tables that are used in this fashion.

To recap the table structure, once again, a general table (see Figure 9-3) has a number of *entries*, each a certain *entry length*, and each having a displacement from the start of the table of entry length times # of entry.

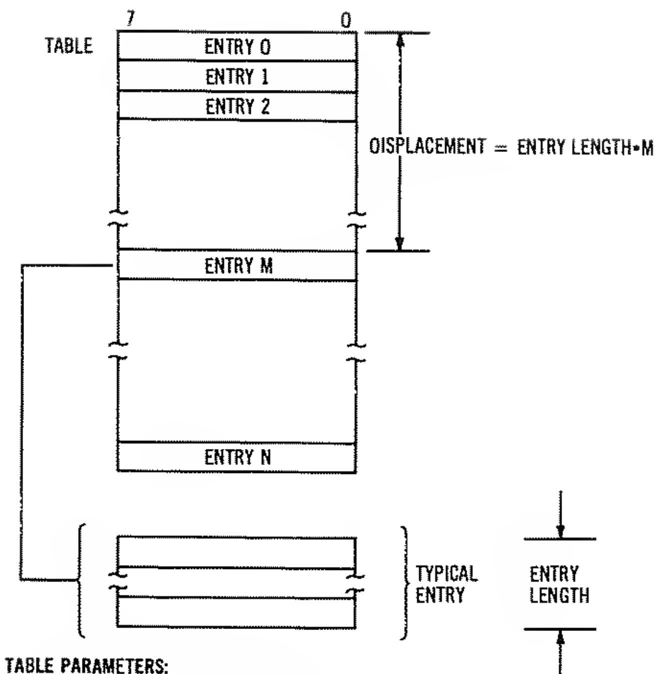


Fig. 9-3. General table structure.

Another method of using tables is to include the data associated with the *search key* in the entry itself, rather than in a separate table. Figure 9-4 shows this type of table. Each entry consists of a disc file name of 1 to 8 characters, a track number, and a sector number. The track and sector number always occupy the ninth and tenth bytes of each entry.

This table could be used to locate a specific *file* on disc by first searching the entire table for the correct file name, and then picking up the location of the file by the associated track and sector number when the file is found.

Unordered Tables

Tables in which the key entries are in random fashion are said to be unordered. When tables of this type are searched

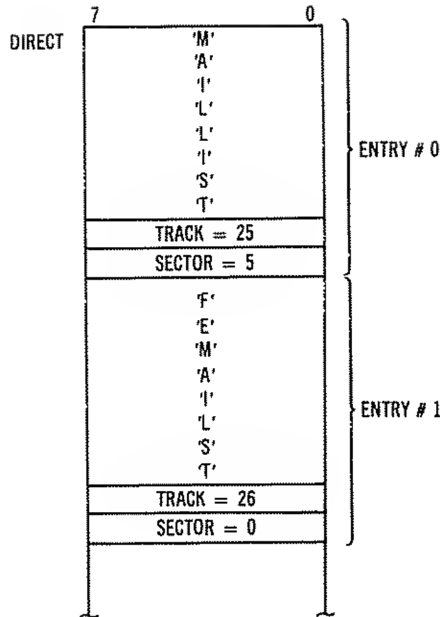


Fig. 9-4. Sample table of disc files.

for a specific entry, the minimum searcb occurs when the first entry is the desired entry and the maximum search occurs wben the last entry is the one sought. The average number of entries that must be searched in this type of table is one-balf the number of entries in the table. This type of table is fine for a small number of entries, but when tbe table must be continually searched and it holds a large number of entries, then a table with ordered entries could be used to a greater advantage.

Tbe following program is another "standard" subroutine that the reader might find useful. It searches an unordered table from beginning to end for an 8-bit search key. Before the subroutine is called, A must be loaded with the search key, HL must be loaded with tbe start of the table, DE must be loaded with the length of each entry, and C must be loaded witb the number of entries. If the entry is found, HL points to the entry upon return and the Z flag is set. If the entry is not found, tbe Z flag is not set upon return. The key in each entry is assumed to be the first byte.

```
                 00100 ;SUBROUTINE FOR TABLE SEARCH
                 00110 ;     ENTRY: (A)=KEY
                 00120 ;            (HL)=TABLE START
                 00130 ;            (DE)=LENGTH OF EACH ENTRY IN BYTES
                 00140 ;            (C)=# OF ENTRIES IN TABLE
                 00150 ;            CALL    SEARCH
                 00160 ;     EXIT: Z FLAG SET IF FOUND, NOT SET IF NOT FOUND
                 00170 ;            (HL)=LOCATION OF MATCH IF FOUND
                 00180 ;            (BC)=CURRENT # LEFT
                 00190 ;            (DE)=UNCHANGED
                 00200 ;
4A00             00210         ORG     4A00H           ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 0600        00220 SEARCH  LD      B,0             ;BC NOW HAS #
4A02 EDA1        00230 LOOP    CPI                     ;COMPARE A WITH (HL)
4A04 CA0E4A      00240         JP      Z,FOUND         ;GO IF FOUND
4A07 E20F4A      00250         JP      PO,NFND         ;AT END AND NOT FND
4A0A 19          00260         ADD     HL,DE           ;CURRENT+LENGTH+1
4A0B 2B          00270         DEC     HL              ;CURRENT +LENGTH
4A0C 18F4        00280         JR      LOOP            ;TRY AGAIN
4A0E 2B          00290 FOUND   DEC     HL              ;ADJUST TO FOUND LOC
4A0F C9          00300 NFND    RET                     ;RETURN
0000             00310         END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
NFND    4A0F
FOUND   4A0E
LOOP    4A02
SEARCH  4A00
```

Ordered Tables

Tables may be ordered in many different ways. The order may be *ascending* as in the sequence 1,3,5,6,7,10, . . . or descending as in the sequence 101,99,97,5,1,0. The keys used for ordering may be one byte or larger straight numeric values, or ASCII text strings. Tables that are ordered invariably require that new data must be merged into the existing order, existing entries deleted or modified, or that the entries

should be resorted. There have been literally thousands of books and articles written about the problems and approaches of sorting (ordering data), searching (finding data), and merging (merging in new data), and we may not cover all of it in this chapter. We will present *one* of the approaches to ordering data in a *list* of items, the *bubble sort*. Becoming familiar with the 16,387 other methods will be left up to the reader as an exercise.

The bubble sort orders data by comparing each entry in a list with the next entry of the list. If the next entry is a lower value, then the two entries are swapped. The next entry is then compared, and so on, until the end of the list is reached. If there has been *at least* one set of items swapped during the search of the list, then another pass is made, starting from the beginning. Passes continue until there have been no swaps made during the last pass, signifying that the list has been ordered. The code for the sort takes advantage of the indexing capability to swap the items, and is shown below.

```
                00100 ;BUBBLE SORT
                00110 ;
4A00            00120        ORG   4A00H
4A00 DD212B4A   00130 LOOP   LD    IX,TABLE     ;TABLE START
4A04 060F       00150        LD    B,15         ;NO OF LINES
4A06 0E00       00160        LD    C,0          ;CHANGE FLAG
4A08 DD7E00     00170 LOOP1  LD    A,(IX)       ;GET ENTRY
4A0B DDBE01     00180        CP    (IX+1)       ;TEST NEXT
4A0E CA1F4A     00185        JP    Z,NOSWAP     ;GO IF EQUAL
4A11 DA1F4A     00190        JP    C,NOSWAP     ;GO IF NEXT LARGER
4A14 DD4E01     00200        LD    C,(IX+1)     ;GET NEXT TO C
4A17 DD7701     00210        LD    (IX+1),A     ;STORE CURRENT
4A1A DD7100     00220        LD    (IX),C       ;STORE NEXT
4A1D 0E01       00270        LD    C,1          ;SET CHANGE FLAG
4A1F DD23       00280 NOSWAP INC   IX           ;POINT TO NEXT
4A21 10E5       00290        DJNZ  LOOP1        ;DECREMENT LN CNT
4A23 CB41       00300        BIT   0,C          ;TEST CHANGE
4A25 C2004A     00310        JP    NZ,LOOP      ;GO IF CHANGE
4A28 C3284A     00320 LOOP2  JP    LOOP2        ;DONE HERE
4A2B            00325 TABLE  EQU   $            ;PUT 16 ITEMS HERE
```

```
0000          00330          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP2   4A28
NOSWAP  4A1F
LOOP1   4A08
TABLE   4A2B
LOOP    4A00
```

Assemble and load the program using T-BUG, or key in the program using T-BUG. TABLE can be filled with any number of data items that the reader desires, in any order. When a breakpoint at LOOP2 is reached, the table will have been reordered so that it is in ascending order, and the bubbles will have done an effective job in cleaning some of that RAM memory area. The reader may wish to breakpoint at the JP NZ,LOOP before LOOP2 to investigate the intermediate sorting after each pass. Use an "F" command and a "G" after looking at the table data, if breakpointing.

For another display of the bubble sort, use the program below. First use the M command in T-BUG to fill screen memory locations 3C20, 3C60, 3CA0, 3CE0, 3D20, 3D60 . . . 3FE0 with alphabetic or other characters in random order. A suggested sequence is shown in Table 9-1. You will see the characters appear in the middle of the screen as you fill them in. Now run the program, and you will see a literal graphic display of the bubble sort implementation.

```
                 00100 ;BUBBLE SORT TO DISPLAY
                 00110 ;
4A00             00120        ORG     4A00H
4A00 DD21203C    00130 LOOP   LD      IX,3C00H+32     ;FIRST LINE, MIDDLE
4A04 114000      00140        LD      DE,64           ;LINE INCREMENT
4A07 060F        00150        LD      B,15            ;NO OF LINES
4A09 0E00        00160        LD      C,0             ;CHANGE FLAG
4A0B DD7E00      00170 LOOP1  LD      A,(IX)          ;GET ENTRY
4A0E DDBE40      00180        CP      (IX+64)         ;TEST NEXT
4A11 CA2B4A      00185        JP      Z,NOSWAP        ;GO IF EQUAL
4A14 DA2B4A      00190        JP      C,NOSWAP        ;GO IF NEXT LARGER
```

```
4A17 DD4E40    00200          LD    C,(IX+64)    ;GET NEXT TO C
4A1A DD7740    00210          LD    (IX+64),A    ;STORE CURRENT
4A1D DD7100    00220          LD    (IX),C       ;STORE NEXT
4A20 210000    00230          LD    HL,0         ;DELAY
4A23 23        00240 LOOPD    INC   HL
4A24 CB7C      00250          BIT   7,H          ;TEST FOR COUNTDOWN
4A26 CA234A    00260          JP    Z,LOOPD      ;GO FOR DELAY
4A29 0E01      00270          LD    C,1          ;SET CHANGE FLAG
4A2B DD19      00280 NOSWAP   ADD   IX,DE        ;POINT TO NEXT LN
4A2D 10DC      00290          DJNZ  LOOP1        ;DECREMENT LN CNT
4A2F CB41      00300          BIT   0,C          ;TEST CHANGE
4A31 C2004A    00310          JP    NZ,LOOP      ;GO IF CHANGE
4A34 C3344A    00320 LOOP2    JP    LOOP2        ;DONE HERE
0000           00330          END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP2    4A34
LOOPD    4A23
NOSWAP   4A2B
LOOP1    4A0B
LOOP     4A00
```

Table 9-1. Bubble Sort Sample Data

Display Memory Location	Contents
3C20H	46H
3C60	45
3CA0	44
3CE0	43
3D20	42
3D60	41
3DA0	39
3DE0	38
3E20	37
3E60	36
3EA0	35
3EE0	34
3F20	33
3F60	32
3FA0	31
3FE0	30

CHAPTER 10

I/O Operations

In this chapter we will rush in where many programmers fear to tread and describe some simple I/O operations in the TRS-80. I/O programming is intimately tied to the hardware configuration of a system, and for that reason some people are somewhat afraid of it, but we hope that the reader will find at the end of the chapter that it is really not that difficult. To lay the groundwork to discuss I/O programming we will review the *memory and I/O* mapping of the TRS-80. Then we will discuss the keyboard, display, cassette, and real-world applications, such as controlling the lawn sprinklers or your electric toothbrush.

Memory Versus I/O

In the first part of the book we talked somewhat about the architecture of the TRS-80. We mentioned that the TRS-80 has 64K or 65,536 bytes of memory available to it and explained how the memory was broken down into ROM, dedicated I/O addresses, and RAM as shown in Figure 10-1. The area that we will be considering in this chapter will be the central area of the figure, the dedicated I/O addresses, together with 256 I/O *ports*.

Let us expand that dedicated I/O address area and see what I/O devices are involved. Figure 10-2 shows that most of the area is devoted to display memory. Anytime that locations 3C00H through 3FFFH are addressed we are communicating with display memory, and that memory looks very similar to

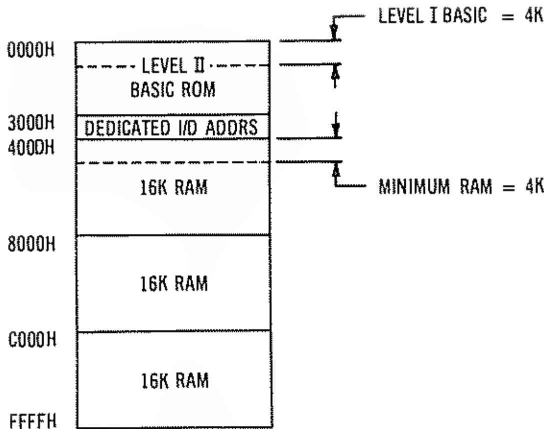


Fig. 10-1. Memory mapping with I/O addresses.

other RAM. We have been using display memory for many of the programs in previous chapters, and the reader should be very familiar with display memory at this point.

The section of dedicated memory from 3800H through 3BFFH is devoted to *keyboard addressing*. In this area memory does not exist, as it does for the display. When a location in this area is addressed, the keys of the TRS-80 keyboard are actually addressed. Addressing location 3801H addresses

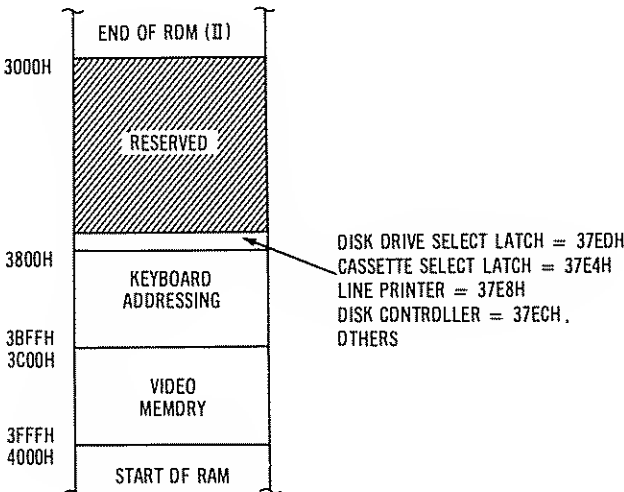
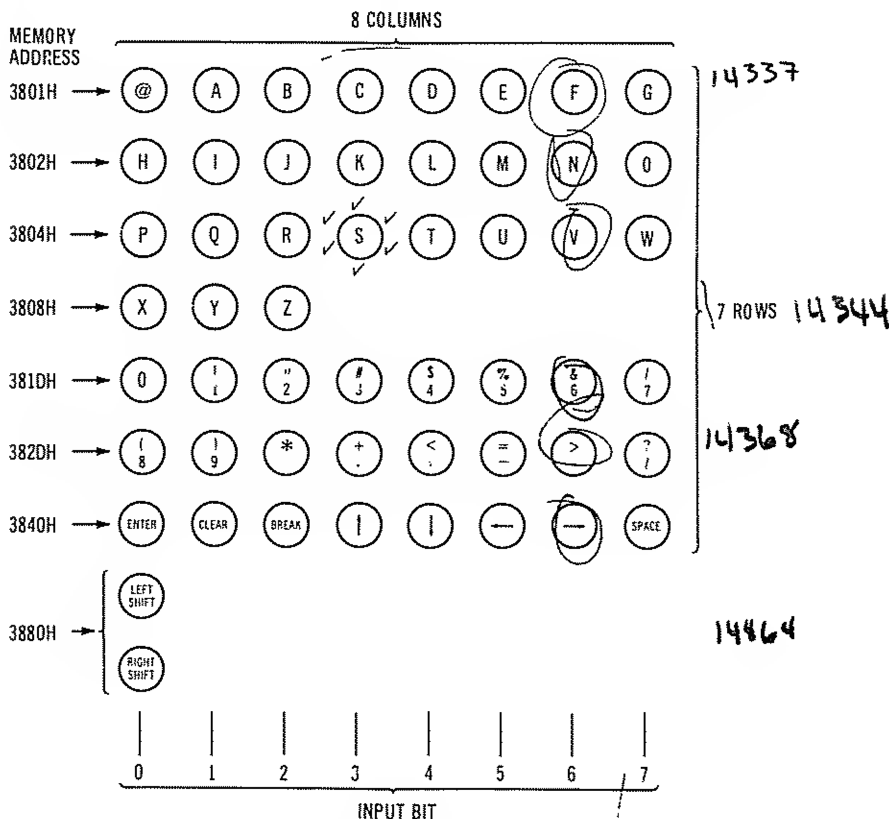


Fig. 10-2. Dedicated memory addresses.

the first row of keys, from "@" to "G", addressing location 3802H addresses the second row of keys from "H" to "O," and so forth, as shown in Figure 10-3. It turns out that there are eight addresses that address the keyboard, and they are 3801H, 3802H, 3804H, 3808H, 3810H, 3820H, 3840H, and 3880H. Every time a load is performed with one of these addresses 8 bits from the columns are loaded into the cpu register, as shown in Figure 10-3. These bits represent keys being pressed (1 bit) or not pressed (0 bit). We will discuss keyboard I/O a little later.



EXAMPLE: IF "S" IS PRESSED INPUT BYTE WILL BE 08H FOR ADDRESSING LOCATION 3804H. ALL OTHER INPUTS WILL YIELD 00H FOR INPUT BYTE.

Fig. 10-3. Keyboard addressing.

The remaining area of the dedicated memory addresses are used for such things as the line printer, floppy disc controller, and cassette select. Most of this area is reserved for future use (3000H through 37DDH). Addressing locations in the addresses above 37DDH enable communications with appropriate I/O devices. Loading a register from "memory" location 37E8H, for example, actually loads the register with eight bits of *status* for the system line printer, if one is attached. The status is a byte that is transmitted by the line printer that indicates whether the line printer is *ready* for the next character, whether it is *on-line*, and whether it has enough paper. Storing a register to location 37E8H actually transmits a byte of data, assumed to be an ASCII character, to the line printer for printing, in exactly the way a character is sent to a normal memory location to be stored.

For all intents and purposes, then, there is no practical difference in addressing a memory location in RAM or display memory and addressing an I/O device, as long as the I/O device is connected in such a manner as to look for that address and respond in the same manner that a memory location would respond.

Along with the memory addressing area devoted to system I/O devices, the TRS-80 has 256 other addresses that are devoted to I/O. These are the addresses used when an I/O instruction is executed. They differ from a memory address in that a signal goes out to all parts of the system that essentially says "here is an *I/O* address of 00000000 through 11111111." That signal is *not* present when a memory address is used (instead another signal goes out that says "here is a memory address of 16 bits").

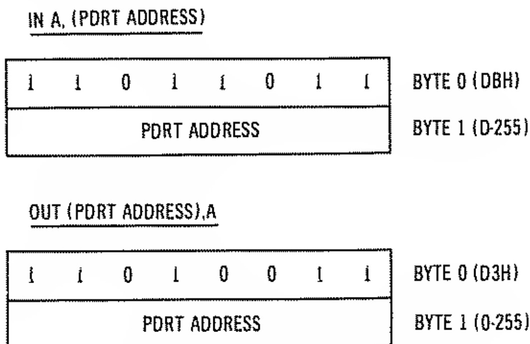


Fig. 10-4. I/O instruction format.

The general form of the I/O instruction is shown in Figure 10-4. There are several other formats, hut we will be using these two in the rest of this chapter. The second byte of the instruction is the *port address* of 0 through 255. When an OUT instruction is executed, 8 bits of data from the A register are sent out to the system along with a signal that says "here is an I/O address" and the actual 8 hits of the port address itself. In a large system there could he many devices attached to the system *bus* (collection of data, address, and control signals), and they would all he continually looking for the I/O signal, *their* unique address (one of the 256), and the data to he received (or sent). See Figure 10-5.

In most configurations of the TRS-80, the only device that is attached in this port fashion is the cassette recorder. Logic on the cpu hoard is continually looking for port address FFH and the I/O signal indicating that an I/O instruction is being executed. If the instruction is an input (IN), the cassette

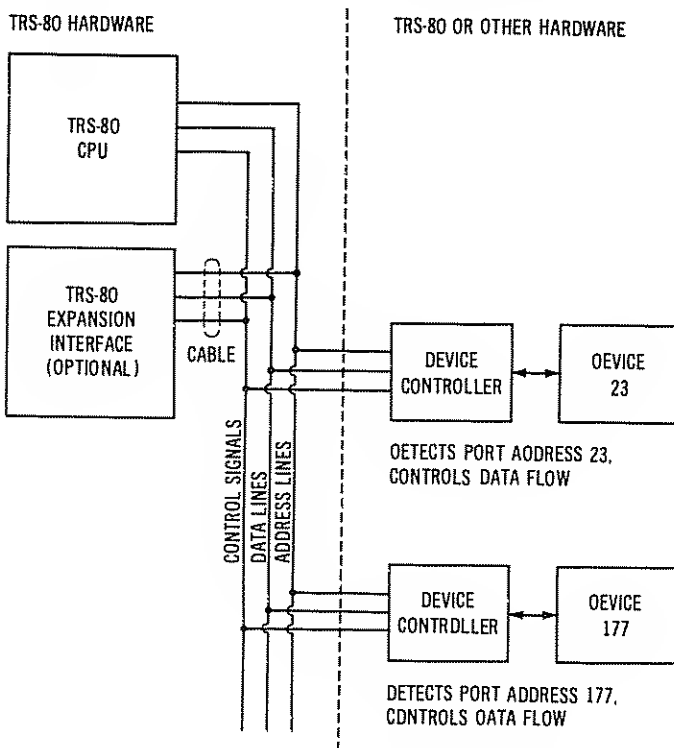


Fig. 10-5. I/O ports and port addressing.

logic will send a byte of data to the A register. Seven of those bits will be zeros, with only the most significant bit being active. If the instruction is an output (OUT), the contents of the A register will be sent to the cassette logic. Only the four least significant bits will cause actions in the logic.

The TRS-80 is expandable so that additional ports can be used by external devices, as long as the port addresses do not conflict with FFH or other port addresses used by TRS-80 devices. Since there are 256 total port addresses, however, there is a great deal of room for expansion, and conceivably the TRS-80 could be used to control dozens of functions such as home beating and lighting, burglar alarms, and others limited only by the user's imagination (and bank account).

Keyboard Decoding

Refer back to Figure 10-3. The keyboard is set up in eight rows and eight columns as shown in the figure. If a key is pressed, then the corresponding bit for that column becomes a one, and if the associated row address is read by a load instruction, then the column *byte* that is loaded will contain a one bit for tbe column of the key. As tbe program knows wbich row of the eight is being addressed when the one bit appears, it knows the key junction from the row and column. This type of I/O operation is called *matrix* decoding as tbe keyboard forms an eight-by-eight matrix.

The following program continually *scans* the keyboard and waits for a one bit to appear for the first and second rows (characters @, A tbrough 0). When a one does appear, tbe row and column is computed to give an index of 0 through 15. This index is then used to *look up* the corresponding character in a sixteen-byte *look-up table*. The character is then printed on the screen.

```
                00100 ;KEYBOARD SCAN ROUTINE FOR FIRST TWO ROWS
                00110 ;
4A00            00120        ORG    4A00H
4A00 0E00       00130 KEYSCN LD     C,0           ;FOR FIRST ROW
4A02 3A0138     00140        LD     A,(3801H)     ;1ST ROW ADDRESS
4A05 B7         00150        OR     A             ;TEST ZERO OR NON-ZERO
4A06 C2124A     00160        JP     NZ,KEY10      ;GO IF KEY PRESSED
4A09 3A0238     00170        LD     A,(3802H)     ;2ND ROW ADDRESS
4A0C B7         00180        OR     A             ;TEST ZERO OR NON-ZERO
```

```
4A0D CA004A    00190        JP     Z,KEYSCN        ;GO IF NO KEY
4A10 0E08      00200        LD     C,8             ;FOR 2ND ROW
4A12 06FF      00210 KEY10  LD     B,0FFH          ;INDEX
4A14 04        00220 KEY20  INC    B               ;DECREMENT INDEX
4A15 CB3F      00230        SRL    A               ;SHIFT 'TIL ZERO
4A17 C2144A    00240        JP     NZ,KEY20        ;GO IF NOT ZERO
4A1A 78        00250        LD     A,B             ;GET # 0-7
4A1B 81        00260        ADD    A,C             ;ADD ROW #
4A1C 4F        00270        LD     C,A             ;INDEX 0-15 TO C
4A1D 0600      00280        LD     B,0             ;ZERO B FOR ADDR
4A1F 21344A    00290        LD     HL,TABLE        ;TABLE OF CHARACTERS
4A22 09        00300        ADD    HL,BC           ;COMPUTE DISPLACEMENT
4A23 7E        00310        LD     A,(HL)          ;GET CHARACTER
4A24 32203E    00320        LD     (3C00H+512+32),A  ;DISPLAY
4A27 0E0A      00330        LD     C,10
4A29 0600      00340 LOOP   LD     B,0             ;DELAY ABOUT 17 MILLISEC
4A2B 10FE      00350 LOOP1  DJNZ   LOOP1
4A2D 0D        00360        DEC    C
4A2E C2294A    00370        JP     NZ,LOOP
4A31 C3004A    00380        JP     KEYSCN          ;GO FOR NEXT KEY
4A34 40        00390 TABLE  DEFM   '@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO'
4A35 41        4A36 42      4A37 43      4A38 44      4A39 45      4A3A 46
   4A3B 47        4A3C 48      4A3D 49      4A3E 4A      4A3F 4B      4A40 4
C        4A41 4D      4A42 4E      4A43 4F      0000         00400        EN
D
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP1   4A2B
LOOP    4A29
TABLE   4A34
KEY20   4A14
KEY10   4A12
KEYSCN  4A00
```

The A register is loaded with the contents of row 1 hy addressing 3801H. If this is zero, the next row, 3802H, is addressed. If either row has at least one hit, the rest of the

program is executed, otherwise the program loops back to KEYSCN to scan the rows again. If a one bit has been detected, the C register holds either 0 for row one or 8 for row 2. The A register holds the column bit corresponding to the key column. As this is a power of two (80H, 40H, 20H, 10H, 8H, 4H, 2H, or 1H) it must be converted to a number representing the column of 0 through 7. This is done by shifting A until it becomes zero, and keeping a count of the number of shifts. 80H will require 7 shifts, for example, before A becomes 0. At the end of the shifting B holds the column number. This is added to the row number of 0 or 8 to produce an index of 0 through 15. This index is then added to the address of TABLE to point to the corresponding character in the table. This character is picked up and displayed on the center of the screen. LOOP is a *timing loop* to *debounce* the key so that the program does not loop back to the *same* key depression and output a spurious character (the same character twice or a number of times).

Although this program works only with the first two rows of keys, the reader can see how it can be expanded to work with *all* keys on the keyboard, and he will find a similar program in Level I or II BASIC.

Display Programming

We have used programs that output botb ASCII and graphics characters to the screen, but have not discussed the graphics capabilities of the TRS-80 in any detail. The display memory is similar to normal RAM memory, except that each address of the 1024 bytes of display memory is made up of seven instead of eight bits, as shown in Figure 10-6. As the reader knows from his BASIC experiences, the display can display upper case alphanumeric and special characters *or* graphics characters, intermixed in any combination. The most significant bit of the 7-bit display memory is used to mark a graphics character. If this bit is a zero, then the remaining six bits define an alphanumeric or special character. If the most significant bit is a one, then the other six bits define a graphics character. The ASCII codes for alphanumeric and special cbaracters are defined in the Editor/Assembler manual or the TRS-80 BASIC manual.

The graphics codes define a six-element graphics character that occupies one character position on the screen. As there are 1024 character positions (64 cbaracters per line and 16 lines), there are 6144 graphics elements on the screen, ar-

ranged in a 128 by 48 matrix. Tbe question arises of bow one sets or resets a single element. There is no corresponding assembly-language SET or RESET command as there is in BASIC.

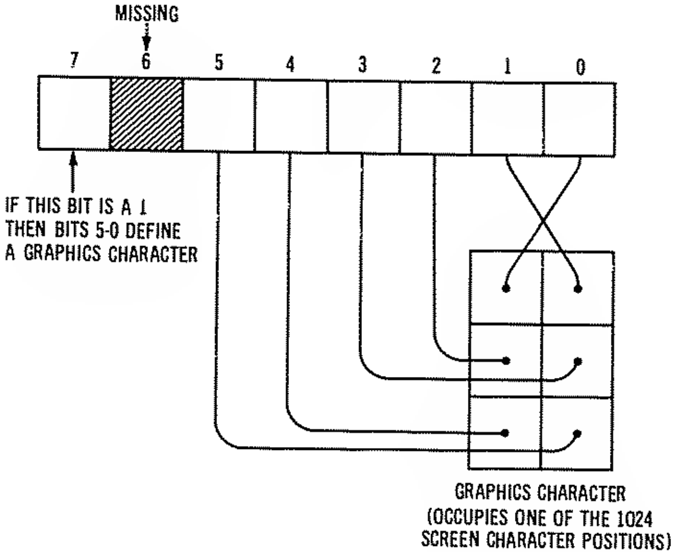


Fig. 10-6. Display memory format.

The following code attempts to solve the problem of converting an x,y coordinate into the proper bit position in the graphics memory cell. There are three entry points in the routine. The first entry point sets the *pixel* (element) corresponding to the given x,y (horizontal, vertical) position. The second entry point resets the pixel corresponding to tbe given x,y position, and the tbird entry point tests the current on/off status of the pixel, returning the zero/non-zero status in the zero flag. The three entry points of SET, RESET, and TEST all converge to a common location at TEST10. Tbe store at TEST10 stores the second byte or a SET, RES, or BIT instruction at location INST+1. The first byte of all three instructions are the same, a CBH. The second byte is complete except for a three-bit field defining the bit to be set, reset, or tested. This will be calculated in the main body of the routine, along with the location in screen memory to be used, which will be put into HL. All three instructions use HL as a register pointer. See Figure 10-7.

The main hody of the code converts an x,y location into a screen memory location and hit position. The hit position is merged into INST+1 to set the proper field. The memory location is retained in HL for the instruction. The actual *algorithm* works like this: The y position of 0-47 is converted to a line numher hy dividing hy 3 to give 0 through 15. The remainder is saved. The x position is divided hy 2 to give the character position along the line. We now have a line numher of 0 through 15 and a character position of 0 through 63. If the line numher is multiplied hy 64 and the character position added to it, we will have the *byte displacement* from the start of screen memory, as shown in Figure 10-8. The actual location can then he found hy adding 3C00H, the start of display memory.

The only remaining task is to find the hit position of the pixel to he set, reset, or tested. This is given hy the remainder of the Y/3 operation times 2 plus the remainder of the X/2 operation. This value is stored in the hit position field of the instruction at INST+1. As a last step, hit 7 is set to ensure that all character positions processed will he graphics characters.

The code for this prohlem is somewhat complex and it may help the reader to "play computer" hy actually using some values of x and y and working through the routine to find

SET B,(HL)

1	1	D	0	1	0	1	1	OPCOOE = CBH
1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	SECOND BYTE = C6H

RES B,(HL)

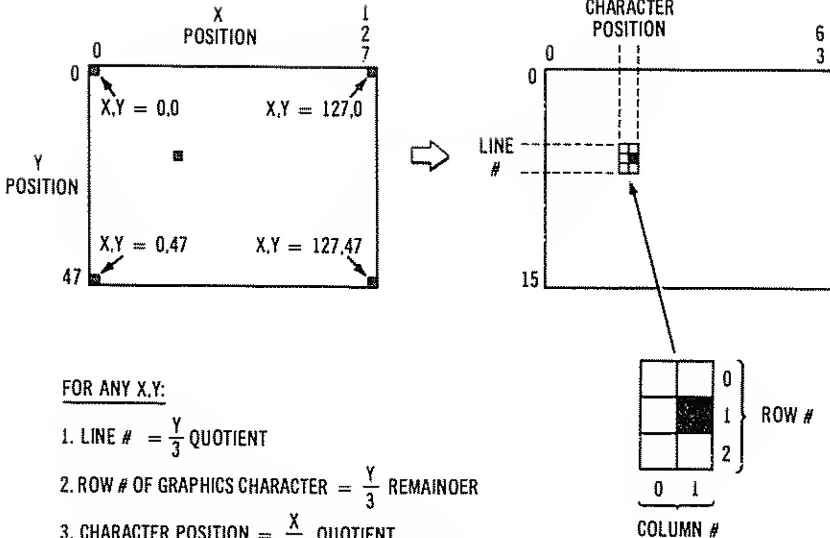
1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	OPCOOE = CBH
1	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	SECOND BYTE = 86H

BIT B,(HL)

1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	DPCOOE = CBH
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	SECONO BYTE = 46H

THIS FIELO FILLEO IN LATER FOR ALL
THREE INSTRUCTIONS TO DEFINE THE
BIT TO BE ACTED UPON

Fig. 10-7. Modifying instructions.



FOR ANY X,Y:

1. LINE # $= \frac{Y}{3}$ QUOTIENT
2. ROW # OF GRAPHICS CHARACTER $= \frac{Y}{3}$ REMAINOER
3. CHARACTER POSITION $= \frac{X}{2}$ QUOTIENT
4. COLUMN # OF GRAPHICS CHARACTER $= \frac{X}{2}$ REMAINOER
5. BYTE OISPLACEMENT FROM START OF SCREEN MEMORY = (LINE #) *64 + CHARACTER POSITION
6. ACTUAL LOCATION IN MEMORY = (LINE #) *64 + CHARACTER POSITION + 3C00H
7. BIT POSITION WITHIN GRAPHICS CHARACTER = (ROW #) *2 + COLUMN NUMBER

Fig. 10-8. Screen coordinate algorithm.

out how it works. An interesting point is that the instruction at INST has been treated as another piece of data to be processed and modified. It is not a good practice to do this in some types of programming (for example, where interrupts are involved), but it is perfectly permissible in many *stand-alone* programs of this type.

```
00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO CONVERT SCREEN COORDINATES
00110 .   ENTRY:(DE)=Y,X COORDINATES OF POINT
00120 .             X=0 TO 127;Y=0 TO 47
00130 .         CALL    SET       ;SETS POINT
00140 .         CALL    RESET     ;RESETS POINT
00150 .         CALL    TEST      ;TESTS POINT RETURNS Z FLAG
00160 .   EXIT: (A THROUGH L)=DESTROYED
```

```
                00170 ;         Z FLAG SET IF TEST
                00180 ;
4A00            00190        ORG     4A00H
4A00 3EC6       00200 SET    LD      A,0C6H       ;SET B,(HL) INSTRUCTION
4A02 1806       00210        JR      TEST10       ;GO TO STORE
4A04 3E86       00220 RESET  LD      A,86H        ;RES B,(HL) INSTRUCTION
4A06 1802       00230        JR      TEST10       ;GO TO STORE
4A08 3E46       00240 TEST   LD      A,46H        ;BIT B,(HL) INSTRUCTION
4A0A 323D4A     00250 TEST10 LD      (INST+1),A   ;STORE 2ND BYTE
4A0D 7A         00260 ADDRES LD      A,D          ;GET Y
4A0E 06FF       00270        LD      B,0FFH       ;-1
4A10 04         00280 LOOP   INC     B            ;SUCCESIVE SUBS FOR DIV
4A11 D603       00290        SUB     3            ; BY THREE
4A13 F2104A     00300        JP      P,LOOP       ;GO IF NOT MINUS
4A16 C603       00310        ADD     A,3          ;YQ IN B, YR IN A
4A18 CB27       00320        SLA     A            ;YR*2
4A1A 4F         00330        LD      C,A          ;SAVE YR*2
4A1B 68         00340        LD      L,B          ;YQ TO L
4A1C 2600       00350        LD      H,0          ;YQ IN HL
4A1E 0606       00360        LD      B,6          ;CNT FOR MULTIPLY BY 64
4A20 29         00370 LOOP1  ADD     HL,HL        ;YQ*2
4A21 10FD       00380        DJNZ    LOOP1        ;GO IF NOT YQ*64
4A23 1600       00390        LD      D,0          ;DE NOW HAS X
4A25 CB3B       00400        SRL     E            ;XQ
4A27 3001       00410        JR      NC,CONT      ;GO IF XR NE 1
4A29 0C         00420        INC     C            ;C NOW HAS YR*2+XR
4A2A 19         00430 CONT   ADD     HL,DE        ;HL NOW HAS YQ*2+XQ
4A2B 11003C     00440        LD      DE,3C00H     ;START OF DISPLAY
4A2E 19         00450        ADD     HL,DE        ;HL NOW HAS DISPLACE
4A2F CB21       00460        SLA     C            ;ALIGN TO FIELD
4A31 CB21       00470        SLA     C
4A33 CB21       00480        SLA     C
4A35 3A3D4A     00490        LD      A,(INST+1)   ;GET INSTRUCTION
4A38 81         00500        ADD     A,C          ;SET FIELD
```

```
4A39 323D4A    00510         LD      (INST+1),A      ;STORE
4A3C CB        00520 INST    DEFB    0CBH            ;PERFORM BIT,SET,RES
4A3D 00        00530         DEFB    0               ;WILL BE FILLED IN
4A3E CBFE      00540         SET     7,(HL)          ;FOR GRAPHICS
4A40 C9        00550         RET
0000           00560         END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
CONT    4A2A
LOOP1   4A20
LOOP    4A10
ADDRES  4A0D
INST    4A3C
TEST    4A08
RESET   4A04
TEST10  4A0A
SET     4A03
```

Mysteries of the Cassette Revealed

The cassette of a one cassette system is controlled by three bits of a 4-bit *latch* in the cpu. The latch is simply another type of memory, which happens to be four bits wide instead of the usual eight. When the cassette is addressed by performing an OUT instruction to port address 0FFH, the cassette latch is loaded with four bits of data as shown in Figure 10-9.

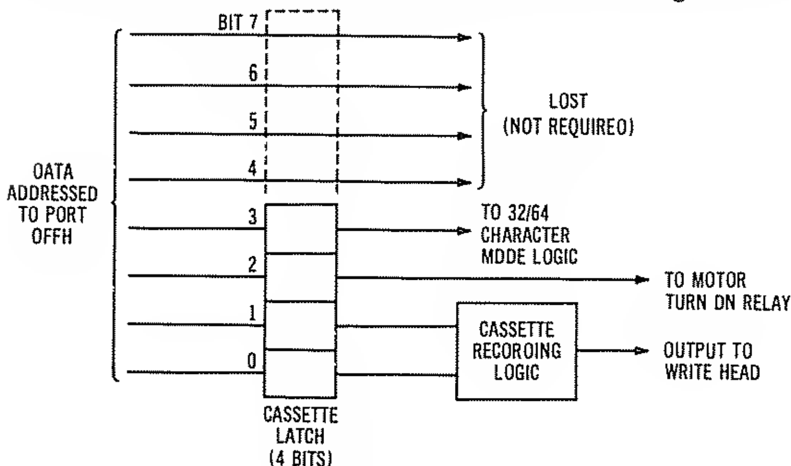


Fig. 10-9. Cassette latch transfers.

The other four bits of data, bits 7 through 4 are discarded into the bit bucket on the floor near the TRS-80.

Bit number 3 of the latch controls the 32- and 64-character mode of the TRS-80. Outputting a one to this bit will set the display into 32 character mode; outputting a zero will reset the display into the normal 64-character mode.

```
LD      A,8        ;BIT 3 IS SET
OUT     0FFH,A     ;SET 32-CHAR MODE
```

Bit number 2 of the cassette latch is the cassette motor on/off bit. Setting this bit by an OUT 0FFH will turn the cassette motor on, and resetting the bit will turn the cassette motor off. This action is produced by a *small* relay in the TRS-80 cpu, and it would be wise to quench all thoughts about controlling that four-ton air conditioner with this one small control device!

```
LD      A,4        ;BIT 2 IS SET
OUT     0FFH,A     ;SET MOTOR ON
```

Bits number 1 and 0 in the cassette latch are used to write data to the cassette tape. As you probably know from reading your TRS-80 Technical Reference Handbook, data on cassette is arranged serially, and everything is represented by a stream of bits. In the implementation on the TRS-80, cassette data is written by setting bit 0 of the cassette latch, then by setting

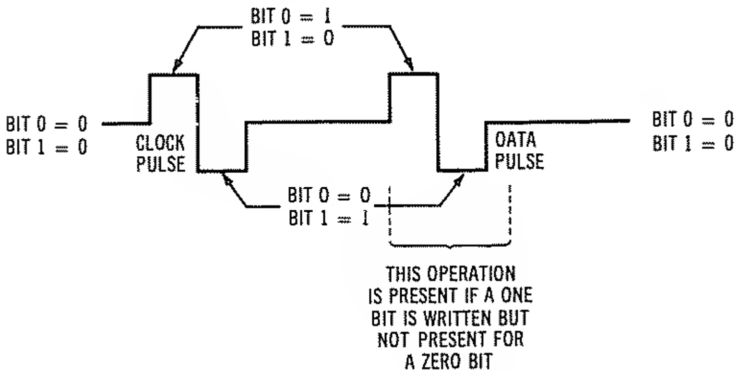


Fig. 10-10. Cassette data waveform.

bit 1 of the cassette latch, and then by resetting both bits. When this is done for both a *clock pulse* and *data pulse* the waveform appears as shown in Figure 10-10.

To illustrate bow this works, let us write a program to record some music on cassette. It might be nice to try a little Bach or Beetboven, but perhaps we'll try something a little simpler. First of all, it is necessary to know how to produce *any* tone on the cassette. A simple tone has the appearance of the *sine* wave of Figure 10-11. We can produce a *square wave* on the cassette by turning the cassette output bits on and off rapidly as shown in the figure.

We know how to turn the cassette signal to the recording head on (01) and off (10), but wbat about tbe time delay to produce the tone? If we look in the Editor/Assembler Manual we find instruction times under "4MHZ E.T." This is the execution time in microseconds for a Z-80 microprocessor running at a *clock frequency* of 4 megahertz (4 million cycles

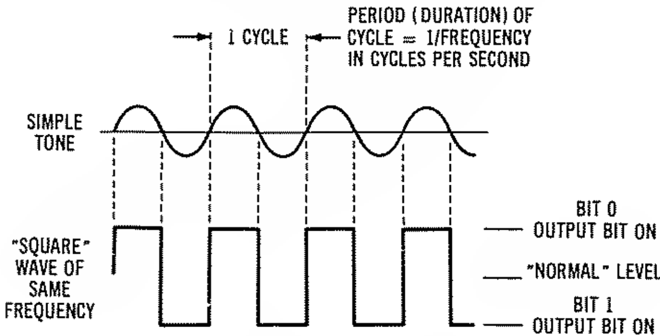


Fig. 10-11. Square wave tones.

per second). The TRS-80 clock frequency is about 1.774 megahertz, so to get tbe actual *execution times* of TRS-80 instructions we must multiply the 4 MHZ E.T. by 2.26. Let us see how long a simple loop would take. If we bave a value of 1 tbrough 255 in the B register, then the simple loop

```
LOOP   DJNZ   LOOP       LOOP HERE FOR 1 TO 255 TIMES
```

would take 3.25 microseconds (4 MHZ E.T.) * 2.255 * count in B, or 7.32 microseconds * count in B. This gives us a range of frequencies from about 535 Hz through 136,612 Hz. (Tbe frequency of the tone can be found by dividing one by the time in microseconds, for example, 500 microseconds would produce a tone of 1/500E-06 or 2000 Hz.)

As the complete cycle would be determined by a timing delay to turn tbe write head on one direction and off the otber, the actual tones tbat could be produced are 267 Hz tbrough

68,306 Hz. If we stay on the lower end of that range we should he ahle to get a nice range of notes.

The routine to play a note with a given value in B follows:

```
PLAYN  LD    C,(DURTN)   ;GET DURATION
CONT   LD    B,(FREQ)    ;GET FREQUENCY
       LD    A,1
       OUT   (0FFH),A    ;TURN ON 1/2 CYCLE
LOOP1  DJNZ  LOOP1       ;DELAY FOR FREQUENCY
       LD    B,(FREQ)    ;GET FREQUENCY
       LD    A,2
       OUT   (0FFH),A    ;TURN ON OTHER 1/2 CYCLE
LOOP2  DJNZ  LOOP2       ;DELAY FOR FREQUENCY
       DEC   C           ;DECREMENT DURATION
       JP    NZ,CONT     ;CONTINUE IF NOT DONE
```

The additional count in C is used to adjust the length of time that the note plays. The value of D is related to the value of the frequency count to make all notes a quarter note duration, or approximately so (what did you expect, the New York Philharmonic?). The entire code required to play the TRS-80 concerto is given below. A table of delay values defines the duration and notes, and is terminated hy a zero.

```
                00100 ;OPUS I THE TRS-80 CONCERTO
                00110 .
4A00            00120        ORG   4A00H
4A00 DD21334A   00130 START  LD    IX,TABLE      ;START OF MUSIC TABLE
4A04 DD4E00     00140 CONT1  LD    C,(IX)        ;DURATION
4A07 79         00150        LD    A,C           ;MOVE TO A FOR TEST
4A08 B7         00160        OR    A             ;TEST FOR 0
4A09 CA094A     00170 LOOP   JP    Z,LOOP        ;LOOP HERE ON DONE
4A0C DD4601     00180 CONT2  LD    B,(IX+1)      ;GET DELAY COUNT
4A0F 3E01       00190        LD    A,1
4A11 D3FF       00200        OUT   (0FFH),A      ;TURN ON 1/2 CYCLE
4A13 10FE       00210 LOOP1  DJNZ  LOOP1         ;DELAY FOR FREQ
4A15 DD4601     00220        LD    B,(IX+1)      ;GET DELAY AGAIN
4A18 3E02       00230        LD    A,2
4A1A D3FF       00240        OUT   (0FFH),A      ;TURN ON OTHER 1/2 CYCLE
4A1C 10FE       00250 LOOP2  DJNZ  LOOP2         ;DELAY FOR FREQ
4A1E 0D         00260 LOOP3  DEC   C             ;DECREMENT DURATION
4A1F C20C4A     00270        JP    NZ,CONT2      ;GO IF NOT DONE
```

```
4A22 DD23       00280        INC    IX          ;POINT TO NEXT NOTE
4A24 DD23       00290        INC    IX
4A26 01FFFF     00300        LD     BC,-1       ;INCREMENT VALUE
4A29 213000     00310        LD     HL,30H      ;INITIAL DELAY VALUE
4A2C 09         00320 LOOP4  ADD    HL,BC       ;DELAY FOR INTERVAL
4A2D DA2C4A     00330        JP     C,LOOP4     ;  BETWEEN NOTES
4A30 C3044A     00340        JP     CONT1       ;CONTINUE
4A33 A090       00350 TABLE  DEFW   90A0H       ;TABLE OF NOTES
4A35 3FA2       00360        DEFW   0A23FH      ;EACH ENTRY IS MADE UP
4A37 5CAC       00370        DEFW   0AC5CH      ;OF TWO BYTES. FIRST
4A39 6090       00380        DEFW   9060H       ;BYTE IS DURATION OF
4A3B A090       00390        DEFW   90A0H       ;NOTE. SECOND BYTE IS
4A3D 4090       00400        DEFW   9040H       ;FREQUENCY VALUE
4A3F 7080       00410        DEFW   8070H
4A41 F090       00420        DEFW   90F0H
4A43 5DA2       00430        DEFW   0A25DH
4A45 5BAD       00440        DEFW   0AD5BH
4A47 6090       00450        DEFW   9060H
4A49 E06B       00460        DEFW   6BE0H
4A4B 485F       00470        DEFW   5F48H
4A4D FF54       00480        DEFW   54FFH
4A4F 00         00490        DEFB   0           ;TERMINATOR
0000            00500        END    4A00H
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP4   4A2C
LOOP3   4A1E
LOOP2   4A1C
LOOP1   4A13
CONT2   4A0C
LOOP    4A09
CONT1   4A04
TABLE   4A33
START   4A00
```

Arrangement compliments of James Garon

Real-World Interfacing

Is it possible to use the TRS-80 to control real-world events? An emphatic yes! But here's the catch. It does take some *hardware*. In this section, we will discuss how real-world control is done. We will be talking about some simple hardware, but you should find it interesting. (Just think about that TRS-80 controlled robot mowing the grass while you sleep in! But seriously . . .)

First of all, let us talk about what types of control can be provided to the external world with the TRS-80. Things externally are controlled by on/off conditions in a large number of cases. Such things as garage door openers, burglar alarms triggered by a switch being opened, sprinkler valves being turned on by a time switch—these are all events controlled by an on/off state. This class of functions can be controlled by *discrete* inputs and outputs to the TRS-80. One bit of an output or input can control or detect the operation, as only an on or off state is involved.

A second class of things in the external world are those events that are not controlled in binary fashion. The temperature of a room, windspeed, dampness of the soil, and lighting intensity are but a few items that have a range of values and cannot be represented by a single binary one or zero. These physical quantities require many bits to represent them, but they *can* be represented. There are many available devices that convert external world quantities into voltage, current, or resistance *analogs* that are then converted into binary form by an *analog-to-digital* converter. The resulting digital form, whether it is 8 bits or 24 can then be read into a computer such as a TRS-80 and processed.

Discrete Inputs

Suppose that we want to input a set of eight bits into the A register. These bits represent eight different discrete inputs that are either on or off. A good example would be a set of inputs from burglar alarm switches in eight rooms of a house. The bits are either a one (switch closed) or a zero (switch open), and we would like to read these eight inputs once a second or so to find out whether a switch that is normally closed is open, or a switch that is normally open is closed. How do we go about designing interface circuitry to do this, and what programming steps are required?

Earlier we discussed I/O ports. If we set up our burglar alarm inputs for a particular I/O port, then that port must have the following capability:

1. It must be able to recognize its address when it is sent over the system *address lines*.
2. It must be able to tell when an I/O instruction is being executed.

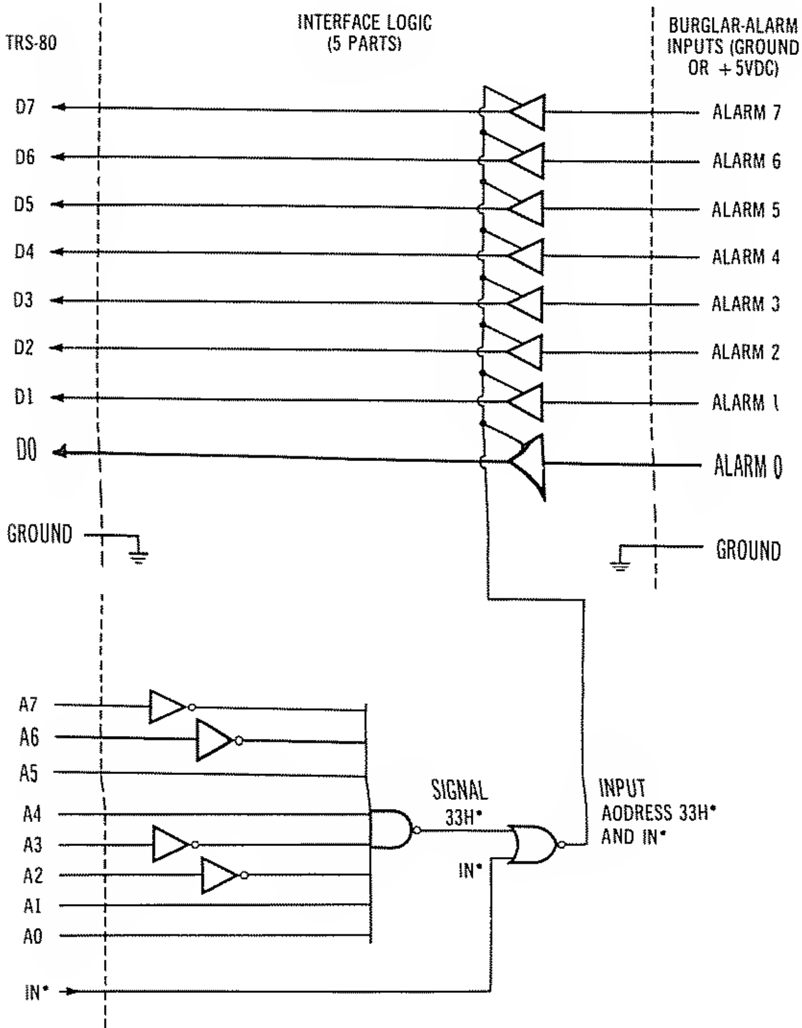


Fig. 10-12. Inputting external data.

3. It must be able to pass the eight bits of data to the cpu over the system *data lines.*

The circuitry for performing these tasks is shown in Figure 10-12. When signal RD* is active (this is the signal on pin 15 of the cpu or interface 40-pin connector), address lines A7 through A0 contain the port address from the IN instruction (address lines A7 through A0 are on various pins of the 40-pin connector). If, for example, we have defined the address of the port as 33H, executing an IN A,(33H) instruction would cause signal RD* to become active and simultaneously put 00110011 on address lines A7 through A0. The circuitry shown in the figure outputs a one for signal INPUT when both RD* and address 33H are present. This will only occur for the IN A,(33H) instruction. Signal INPUT allows the burglar alarm inputs to be *gated* (transmitted) from the eight lines onto the system data bus lines D7 through D0 (on various pins of the connector). During the execution of the IN A,(33H) the cpu will take the contents of the data bus and store it in the A register, completing the execution of the IN instruction. Now the data from the eight inputs can be processed, which might go something like this

```
LOOP  IN   A,(33H)   ;GET INPUTS
      XOR  0B3H      ;TEST 7,5,4,1,0 ON;6,3,2 OFF
      JP   NZ,HELP   ;GO IF BURGLAR
      JP   LOOP      ;TRY AGAIN
```

As the entire input, test, and loop takes under 20 millionths of a second (!) the constraint of one test every second is indeed met. As a matter of fact, there is more than enough time to do all kinds of other processing or control applications and still meet the *poll* of the burglar alarms every second.

This implementation is one of the more simple real-world applications. However, an output of discrete values is not much more complicated. The signal decoded in this case is analogous to the IN* signal, and, strangely enough, is called OUT*. The output operation works as follows: When signal OUT* is active a port address is present on the address bus lines A7 through A0. If the port address matches the built-in address of the hardware, then there is data for the port on data lines D7 through D0. If this is the case, the data lines are written into a memory *latch* similar to that used for the cassette. When the data disappears (it is only present for a few microseconds), the latch will retain the bit configuration and transmit it to the outside world. This circuitry is shown in Figure 10-13.

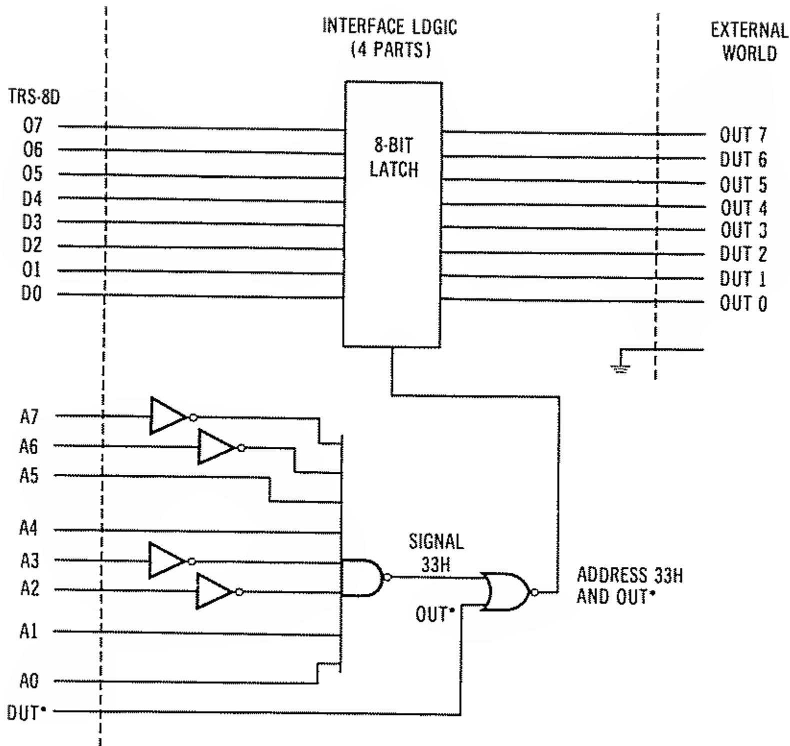


Fig. 10-13. Outputting data to the external world.

Suppose we have a set of lawn sprinkler valves that must be turned on at certain times. Location TIME holds the time in increments of one minute. The time at 12:00 noon is represented by a count of 720 in the two-byte variable. To turn sprinklers 3 and 5 on at noon, the interface in Figure 10-13 is used, along with the code below.

```
LD    HL,TIME     ;GET CURRENT TIME IN MINUTES
LD    BC,720      ;NOON
OR    A           ;RESET CARRY
SBC   HL,BC       ;TEST FOR NOON
JP    NZ,OTHER    ;CONTINUE WITH OTHER PROCESSING
LD    A,28H       ;SPRINKLERS 3 AND 5
OUT   (033H),A    ;TURN THEM ON
```

Another method for implementing discrete input and outputs involves a memory-mapped approach similar to that used for the line printer and other devices. Here IN and OUT instructions are not used, but the external logic is treated as

memory locations and loads and stores are used instead. This is also a valid approach but requires slightly different implementation. The problem of reading in other than discrete inputs or of outputting other than discrete bit patterns is similar to the methods described previously. The major consideration in this case is the conversion between analog values and digital 8-bit values required. The logic required for reading or writing the digital values between the cpu registers and the I/O port, however, is exactly the same as described above.

We hope that these very simple examples will give you some insight into the nature of external-world interfacing. With a little bit of external logic, the TRS-80 can indeed be used to control any number of things around the home or in industry, and with assembly-language programming, this control can be fast indeed.

CHAPTER 11

Common Subroutines

The subroutines presented in this section are the "common" subroutines described elsewhere in the book. Many of them are used continually in larger programs, and they are given here so that the reader may incorporate them into his own programs if he desires. All of them are *subroutines* and must be CALLed from the reader's code. All are assembled at 4A00H, and must be reassembled by incorporating the source code into the reader's source code, or by separate reassembly with a new *ORiGin*. A brief description of each routine is given below, with the assembly following.

FILL Subroutine

The FILL subroutine is used to fill a block of memory with a given 8-bit value. FILL could be used, for example, to zero a buffer, or to fill the video display area with blank characters. On entry, the D register contains the character to be filled, HL points to the start of the fill area, and BC contains the number of bytes to fill, 1 through 65535. An entry with BC=0 is treated as 65536 bytes to fill. On exit HL points to the last byte filled plus one, D is unchanged, and A and BC are zeroed.

```
00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO FILL DATA IN MEMORY
00110 .      ENTRY:(D)=DATA TO BE FILLED
00120 .            (HL)=START OF FILL AREA
00130 .            (BC)=# OF BYTES TO FILL
```

```
                   00140 .          CALL    FILL
                   00150 .    EXIT: (D)=SAME
                   00160 .          (HL)=END OF FILL+1
                   00170 .          (BC)=0
                   00180 .          (A)=0
                   00190 .
4A00               00200      ORG     4A00H
4A00 72            00210 FILL LD      (HL),D         ;STORE BYTE
4A01 23            00220      INC     HL             ;BUMP POINTER
4A02 0B            00230      DEC     BC             ;ADJUST COUNT
4A03 78            00240      LD      A,B            ;GET MS OF COUNT
4A04 B1            00250      OR      C              ;MERGE LS COUNT
4A05 20F9          00260      JR      NZ,FILL        ;CONTINUE IF DONE
4A07 C9            00270      RET                    ;RETURN IF DONE
0000               00280      END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
FILL    4A00
```

MOVE Subroutine

The MOVE subroutine is used to move one block of memory to another area in memory. The blocks may be *overlapping* without conflict; the program is "smart" enough to calculate the direction of the move based on the type of overlap. On entry HL, DE, and BC are set up as in the block move instructions—HL points to the source block, DE points to the destination block, and BC holds the number of bytes to move. On exit, HL and DE point either to the block areas plus one, or to the block areas minus one, based on the direction of the move. BC contains zero.

```
00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO MOVE MEMORY
00110 .    ENTRY:(HL)=SOURCE START
00120 .          (DE)=DESTINATION START
00130 .          (BC)=# OF BYTES TO MOVE
00140 .    EXIT:(HL)=SOURCE AREA+1
00150 .          (DE)=DEST AREA+1
00160 .          (BC)=0
00170 .
```

```
4A00           00180       ORG   4A00H      ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 E5        00190 MOVE  PUSH  HL         ;SAVE SOURCE PNTR
4A01 B7        00200       OR    A          ;CLEAR CARRY
4A02 ED52      00210       SBC   HL,DE      ;SOURCE-DEST PNTRS
4A04 E1        00220       POP   HL         ;RESTORE PNTR
4A05 DA0C4A    00230       JP    C,MOV10    ;GO IF MOVE BACK
4A08 EDB0      00240       LDIR             ;MOVE FORWARD
4A0A 1808      00250       JR    MOV20      ;GO TO RETURN
4A0C 09        00260 MOV10 ADD   HL,BC      ;POINT TO END+1
4A0D 2B        00270       DEC   HL         ;POINT TO END
4A0E EB        00280       EX    DE,HL      ;SWAP
4A0F 09        00290       ADD   HL,BC      ;POINT TO END+1
4A10 2B        00300       DEC   HL         ;POINT TO END
4A11 EB        00310       EX    DE,HL      ;SWAP BACK
4A12 EDB8      00320       LDDR             ;MOVE BACK
4A14 C9        00330 MOV20 RET              ;RETURN
0000           00340       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
MOV20  4A14
MOV10  4A0C
MOVE   4A00
```

MULADD Subroutine

MULADD is a subroutine to perform multiple-precision adds. Two multiple-precision operands from one to 256 bytes in length are added to each other, and the result is put into the destination operand. The source operand remains unchanged. The operands are located anywhere in memory desired, with the data arranged most significant byte through least significant byte from low memory through high memory. On entry the IX register points to the first byte (most significant) of the destination operand and IY points to the first byte (most significant) of the source operand. Both operands are treated as the same length. The B register contains the number of bytes in each operand from 1 through 255. An entry of B=0 is treated as a length of 256 bytes. On exit, the destination operand contains the result of the add. IX and IY are un-

changed. The B register is zeroed, and the A register is destroyed.

```
                00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO DO MULTIPLE-PRECISION ADDS
                00110 .    ENTRY:(IX)=POINTS TO MS BYTE OF DESTINATION
                00120 .          (IY)=POINTS TO MS BYTE OF SOURCE
                00130 .          (B)=# OF BYTES IN OPERANDS
                00140 .          CALL  MULADD
                00150 .          (RETURN)
                00160 .    EXIT:(IX)=UNCHANGED
                00170 .         (IY)=UNCHANGED
                00180 .         (A)=DESTROYED
                00190 .         (B)=0
                00200 .
4A00            00210        ORG    4A00H          ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 D5         00220 MULADD PUSH   DE             ;SAVE DE
4A01 58         00230        LD     E,B            ;#BYTES TO E
4A02 1600       00240        LD     D,0            ;DE NOW HAS #
4A04 1B         00250        DEC    DE             ;DE NOW HAS #-1
4A05 DD19       00260        ADD    IX,DE          ;POINT TO LS BYTE
4A07 FD19       00270        ADD    IY,DE          ;POINT TO LS BYTE
4A09 D1         00280        POP    DE             ;RESTORE ORIGINAL
4A0A AF         00290        XOR    A              ;RESET CARRY
4A0B DD7E00     00300 LOOP   LD     A,(IX)         ;GET DESTINATION
4A0E FD8E00     00310        ADC    A,(IY)         ;ADD SOURCE
4A11 DD7700     00320        LD     (IX),A         ;STORE RESULT
4A14 1001       00330        DJNZ   LOOP1          ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A16 C9         00340        RET                   ;RETURN
4A17 DD2B       00350 LOOP1  DEC    IX             ;PNT TO NEXT HIGHER
4A19 FD2B       00360        DEC    IY             ;PNT TO NEXT HIGHER
4A1B C30B4A     00370        JP     LOOP           ;CONTINUE
0000            00380        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP1   4A17
LOOP    4A0B
MULSUB  4A00
```

MULSUB Subroutine

The MULSUB suhroutine performs multiple-precision subtracts. Two multiple-precision operands from one hyte to 256 hytes in length are suhtracted from each other, and the result is put into the destination operand memory locations. The source operand remains unchanged. The operands are located anywhere in memory desired, with the data arranged most significant hyte through least significant hyte from low memory through high memory. On entry the IX register points to the first byte (most significant) of the destination operand and IY points to the first hyte (most significant) of the source operand. Both operands are treated as the same length. The B register contains the number of hytes in each operand from 1 through 255. An entry of B=0 is treated as a length of 256 hytes. On exit, the destination operand contains the result of the subtract. IX and IY are unchanged. The B register is zeroed, and the A register is destroyed.

```
                00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO DO MULTIPLE-PRECISION SUBTRACTS
                00110 ;   ENTRY:(IX)=POINTS TO MS BYTE OF DESTINATION
                00120 ;         (IY)=POINTS TO MS BYTE OF SOURCE
                00130 ;         (B)=# OF BYTES IN OPERANDS
                00140 ;         CALL  MULSUB
                00150 ;         (RETURN)
                00160 ;   EXIT:(IX)=UNCHANGED
                00170 ;        (IY)=UNCHANGED
                00180 ;        (A)=DESTROYED
                00190 ;        (B)=0
                00200 ;
4A00            00210        ORG   4A00H      ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 D5         00220 MULSUB PUSH  DE         ;SAVE DE
4A01 58         00230        LD    E,B        ;#BYTES TO E
4A02 1600       00240        LD    D,0        ;DE NOW HAS #
4A04 1B         00250        DEC   DE         ;DE NOW HAS #-1
4A05 DD19       00260        ADD   IX,DE      ;POINT TO LS BYTE
4A07 FD19       00270        ADD   IY,DE      ;POINT TO LS BYTE
4A09 D1         00280        POP   DE         ;RESTORE ORIGINAL
4A0A AF         00290        XOR   A          ;RESET CARRY
4A0B DD7E00     00300 LOOP   LD    A,(IX)     ;GET DESTINATION
```

```
4A0E FD9E00   00310         SBC    A,(IY)        ;SUBTRACT SOURCE
4A11 DD7700   00320         LD     (IX),A        ;STORE RESULT
4A14 1001     00330         DJNZ   LOOP1         ;GO IF NOT DONE
4A16 C9       00340         RET                  ;RETURN
4A17 DD2B     00350 LOOP1   DEC    IX            ;PNT TO NEXT HIGHER
4A19 FD2B     00360         DEC    IY            ;PNT TO NEXT HIGHER
4A1B C30B4A   00370         JP     LOOP          ;CONTINUE
0000          00380         END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
LOOP1    4A17
LOOP     4A0B
MULSUB   4A00
```

CMPARE Subroutine

The CMPARE subroutine compares two 8-bit operands in true algebraic fashion, that is, a −5 is less than a −1, and so forth. Three return points must be provided by the user after the CALL to CMPARE. Each return point must have a jump instruction of three bytes. The first return point is the return made when the A operand is less than the B operand. The second return point is the return made when the two operands are equal. The third return point is the return made when operand A is greater than operand B. By putting in jumps to the same areas, any combination of equalities may he constructed. For example, if the three return points have

```
JP   ONE   ;JUMP TO ONE ON LESS THAN
JP   ONE   ;JUMP TO ONE ON EQUAL
JP   TWO   ;JUMP TO TWO ON GREATER THAN
```

a jump will be made to location "ONE" if A is less than or equal to B, and a jump to location "TWO" will he made if A is greater than B.

On entry, the A register contains the first operand, and the B register contains the second. On exit, the return point is based on the comparison of A to B. A remains unchanged along with B, and the HL register is destroyed.

```
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
GREATR   4A11
LESST    4A13
DIFFER   4A15
```

```
                00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO COMPARE TWO 8-BIT SIGNED OPERANDS
                00110 ;     ENTRY: (A)=OPERAND 1
                00120 ;            (B)=OPERAND 2
                00130 ;            CALL   CMPARE          ;CALL SR
                00140 ;            (RTN FOR A LT B)       ;PUT JP  LESST HERE
                00150 ;            (RRTN FOR A=B)         ;PUT JP  EQUAL HERE
                00160 ;            (RTN FOR A GT B)       ;PUT JP  GREATR HERE
                00170 ;     EXIT:  (A)=UNCHANGED
                00180 ;            (B)=UNCHANGED
                00190 ;            (HL)=DESTROYED
                00200 ;
4A00            00210        ORG    4A00H           ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 E1         00220 CMPARE POP    HL              ;GET RTN ADDRESS
4A01 D5         00230        PUSH   DE              ;SAVE DE
4A02 110300     00240        LD     DE,3            ;ADDRESS INCREMENT
4A05 B8         00250        CP     B               ;COMPARE A:B
4A06 280A       00260        JR     Z,EQUAL         ;GO IF EQUAL
4A08 F5         00270        PUSH   AF              ;SAVE FLAGS
4A09 A8         00280        XOR    B               ;TEST SIGN BITS
4A0A 17         00290        RLA                    ;XOR TO C
4A0B DA154A     00300        JP     C,DIFFER        ;GO IF DIFFERENT SIGNS
4A0E F1         00310        POP    AF              ;RESTORE FLAGS
4A0F 3802       00320        JR     C,LESST         ;GO IF A LT B
4A11 19         00330 GREATR ADD    HL,DE           ;BUMP RTN BY 3
4A12 19         00340 EQUAL  ADD    HL,DE           ;BUMP RTN BY 3
4A13 D1         00350 LESST  POP    DE              ;RESTORE DE
4A14 E9         00360        JP     (HL)            ;RTN TO 0,3,6
4A15 F1         00370 DIFFER POP    AF              ;RESTORE FLAGS
4A16 DA114A     00380        JP     C,GREATR        ;GO IF A GT B
4A19 C3134A     00390        JP     LESST           ;A LT B
0000            00400        END
EQUAL   4A12
CMPARE  4A00
```

MUL16 Subroutine

Tbe MUL16 multiplies an unsigned 16-bit number in the DE register by an unsigned 8-bit number in tbe B register,

putting the result in the HL register. As the numbers are unsigned, DE may hold from 0 through 65535 and B may hold from 0 through 255. Overflow may result if the product is too large to be held in 16 bits. There is no check on overflow. On entry, DE contains the 16-bit multiplicand and B contains the 8-bit multiplier. On exit, HL contains the 16-bit product, DE is destroyed, and B contains 0.

```
              00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO MULTIPLY 16 BY 8
              00110 ;   ENTRY:(DE)=MULTIPLICAND,UNSIGNED
              00120 ;         (B)=MULTIPLIER,UNSIGNED
              00130 ;         CALL  MUL16
              00140 ;   EXIT: (HL)=PRODUCT
              00150 ;         (DE)=DESTROYED
              00160 ;         (B)=0
              00170 ;
4A00          00180       ORG   4A00H     ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 210000   00190 MUL16 LD    HL,0      ;CLEAR PARTIAL PRODUCT
4A03 CB38     00200 LOOP  SRL   B         ;SHIFT OUT M'IER BIT
4A05 3001     00210       JR    NC,CONT   ;GO IF NO CARRY (1 BIT)
4A07 19       00220       ADD   HL,DE     ;ADD MULTIPLICAND
4A08 C8       00230 CONT  RET   Z         ;GO IF M'IER
4A09 EB       00240       EX    DE,HL     ;MULTIPLICAND TO HL
4A0A 29       00250       ADD   HL,HL     ;SHIFT MULTIPLICAND
4A0B EB       00260       EX    DE,HL     ;SWAP BACK
4A0C C3034A   00270       JP    LOOP      ;CONTINUE
0000          00280       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
CONT   4A08
LOOP   4A03
MUL16  4A00
```

DIV16 Subroutine

The DIV16 subroutine divides an unsigned 16-bit number in the HL register pair by an unsigned 8-bit number in the D register. The quotient is placed in the IX register and the remainder is left in H. As the numbers are unsigned, the dividend in HL may be 0 through 65535 and the divisor in D may

be 0 through 255. Overflow will result on division by zero. The remainder is less than the divisor. On entry, HL contains the 16-bit dividend and D contains the 8-bit divisor. On exit, IX contains the 16-bit quotient and H contains the 8-bit remainder. The L and A registers are destroyed, E is zeroed, and the D register is unchanged.

```
                  00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO DIVIDE 16 BY 8
                  00110 ;    ENTRY:(HL)=DIVIDEND 16 BITS
                  00120 ;          (D)=DIVISOR 8 BITS
                  00125 ;          CALL  DIV16
                  00130 ;    EXIT: (IX)=QUOTIENT 16 BITS
                  00140 ;          (H)=REMAINDER 8 BITS
                  00150 ;          (L)=DESTROYED
                  00160 ;          (D)=UNCHANGED
                  00170 ;          (E)=0
                  00180 ;          (A)=DESTROYED
                  00190 ;
4A00              00200        ORG   4A00H      ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 7D           00210 DIV16  LD    A,L        ;LS BYTE DIVDND
4A01 6C           00220        LD    L,H        ;MS BYTE DIVDND
4A02 2600         00230        LD    H,0        ;CLEAR FOR SUBT
4A04 1E00         00240        LD    E,0        ;SETUP FOR SUBTRACT
4A06 0610         00250        LD    B,16       ;16 ITERATIONS
4A08 DD210000     00260        LD    IX,0       ;INITIALIZE QUOTIENT
4A0C 29           00270 LOOP   ADD   HL,HL      ;SHIFT DIVD LEFT
4A0D 17           00280        RLA              ;SHIFT 8 LS BITS
4A0E D2124A       00290        JP    NC,LOOP1   ;GO IF 0 BIT
4A11 2C           00300        INC   L          ;SHIFT TO HL
4A12 DD29         00310 LOOP1  ADD   IX,IX      ;SHIFT QUOTIENT LEFT
4A14 DD23         00320        INC   IX         ;Q BIT=1
4A16 B7           00330        OR    A          ;CLEAR CARRY FOR SUB
4A17 ED52         00340        SBC   HL,DE      ;TRY SUBTRACT
4A19 D21F4A       00350        JP    NC,CONT    ;GO IF IT WENT
4A1C 19           00360        ADD   HL,DE      ;RESTORE
4A1D DD2B         00370        DEC   IX         ;SET Q BIT=0
4A1F 10EB         00380 CONT   DJNZ  LOOP       ;GO IF NOT 16
```

```
4A21 C9        00390        RET                    RETURN
0000           00400        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
CONT    4A1F
LOOP1   4A12
LOOP    4A0C
DIV16   4A00
```

HEXCV Subroutine

HEXCV is a subroutine to convert an 8-hit value (two hexadecimal digits) into two ASCII characters representing the hexadecimal cbaracters 0 through 9 and A through F. On entry, the A register contains the 8-hit value to he converted. On exit, the H register contains an ASCII character representing the hex character for the four high-order hits and the L register contains an ASCII character representing the hex character for the four low-order bits. The A and C registers are destroyed.

```
              00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO CONVERT FROM HEX TO ASCII
              00110 .
              00120 .  ENTRY:(A)=8-BIT VALUE TO BE CONVERTED
              00130 .          CALL   HEXCV
              00140 .          (RETURN)
              00150 ,  EXIT: (HL)=TWO ASCII VALUES, HIGH AND LOW
              00160 .          (A)=DESTROYED
              00170 .          (C)=DESTROYED
              00180 .
4A00          00190        ORG    4A00H      ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 4F       00200 HEXCV  LD     C,A        ;SAVE TWO HEX DIGITS
4A01 CB3F     00210        SRL    A          ;ALIGN HIGH DIGIT
4A03 CB3F     00220        SRL    A
4A05 CB3F     00230        SRL    A
4A07 CB3F     00240        SRL    A
4A09 CD154A   00250        CALL   TEST       ;CONVERT TO ASCII
4A0C 67       00260        LD     H,A        ;SAVE FOR RTN
4A0D 79       00270        LD     A,C        ;RESTORE ORIGINAL
4A0E E60F     00280        AND    0FH        ;GET LOW DIGIT
```

```
4A10 CD154A    00290       CALL   TEST      ;CONVERT TO ASCII
4A13 6F        00300       LD     L,A       ;SAVE FOR RTN
4A14 C9        00310       RET
4A15 C630      00320 TEST  ADD    A,30H     ;CONVERSION FACTOR
4A17 FE3A      00330       CP     3AH       ;TEST FOR 0-9
4A19 FA1E4A    00340       JP     M,TEST1   ;GO IF 0-9
4A1C C607      00350       ADD    A,7       ;CORRECT FOR A-F
4A1E C9        00360 TEST1 RET              ;RETURN
0000           00370       END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
TEST1   4A1E
TEST    4A15
HEXCV   4A00
```

SEARCH Subroutine

The SEARCH subroutine searches a table for a given *key* value of 8 bits. The table may be any number of entries from 1 through 256, with each entry a *fixed-length* of one to n bytes. The table may be located anywhere in memory. The key value is assumed to be the first byte in each entry.

On entry, the A register holds the 8-bit key of 0 through 255. HL points to the start of the table in memory. DE contains the length of each entry in bytes. The C register holds the number of entries in the table, from 1 through 255. On exit, the Z flag is set if the key has been found in the table, and the HL register points to the entry containing the matching value in this case. If the key is not found, the Z flag is not set upon return. If the key is found, BC contains the current number of entries *left* in the table. In this case the subroutine may be called again to search for another occurrence of the key, without changing the contents of HL, DE, BC, or A.

SET, RESET, and TEST Subroutines

These subroutines are used to set, reset, and test a point on the screen in similar fashion to SET, RESET, and POINT in BASIC. The screen coordinate values given are converted into corresponding memory locations in video memory, which are

```
                00100 ;SUBROUTINE FOR TABLE SEARCH
                00110 ;   ENTRY:(A)=KEY
                00120 ;         (HL)=TABLE START
                00130 ;         (DE)=LENGTH OF EACH ENTRY IN BYTES
                00140 ;         (C)=# OF ENTRIES IN TABLE
                00150 ;         CALL   SEARCH
                00160 ;   EXIT: Z FLAG SET IF FOUND,NOT SET IF NOT FOUND
                00170 ;         (HL)=LOCATION OF MATCH IF FOUND
                00180 ;         (BC)=CURRENT # LEFT
                00190 ;         (DE)=UNCHANGED
                00200 ;
4A00            00210        ORG     4A00H          ;CHANGE ON REASSEMBLY
4A00 0600       00220 SEARCH LD      B,0            ;BC NOW HAS #
4A02 EDA1       00230 LOOP   CPI                    ;COMPARE A WITH (HL)
4A04 CA0E4A     00240        JP      Z,FOUND        ;GO IF FOUND
4A07 E20F4A     00250        JP      PO,NFND        ;AT END AND NOT FND
4A0A 19         00260        ADD     HL,DE          ;CURRENT+LENGTH+1
4A0B 2B         00270        DEC     HL             ;CURRENT +LENGTH
4A0C 18F4       00280        JR      LOOP           ;TRY AGAIN
4A0E 2B         00290 FOUND  DEC     HL             ;ADJUST TO FOUND LOC
4A0F C9         00300 NFND   RET                    ;RETURN
0000            00310        END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
NFND    4A0F
FOUND   4A0E
LOOP    4A02
SEARCH  4A00
```

then processed. The high-order hit of each memory location is set when any of the three suhroutines is called, on the assumption that the coordinates addressed represent graphics points.

On entry, DE contains the y,x coordinates. The D register contains the Y value of 0 through 47, while the E register holds the X value of 0 through 127. A CALL is made to SET, RESET, or TEST to set, reset, or test the coordinate specified.

On exit, the A, B, C, D, E, H, and L registers are destroyed. If a test was involved, the Z flag is set if the point was a zero and reset if the point was a one.

Care must be taken in using this subroutine to make certain that the x and y values are in the range given, as the subroutine may wreak havoc if invalid values are input.

```
                00100 ;SUBROUTINE TO CONVERT SCREEN COORDINATES
                00110 .     ENTRY:(DE)=Y,X COORDINATES OF POINT
                00120 .                X=0 TO 127;Y=0 TO 47
                00130 .           CALL    SET         ;SETS POINT
                00140 .           CALL    RESET       ;RESETS POINT
                00150 .           CALL    TEST        ;TESTS POINT RETURNS Z FLAG
                00160 .     EXIT: (A THROUGH L)=DESTROYED
                00170 .           Z FLAG SET IF TEST
                00180 .
4A00            00190        ORG     4A00H
4A00 3EC6       00200 SET    LD      A,0C6H          ;SET B,(HL) INSTRUCTION
4A02 1806       00210        JR      TEST10          ;GO TO STORE
4A04 3E86       00220 RESET  LD      A,86H           ;RES B,(HL) INSTRUCTION
4A06 1802       00230        JR      TEST10          ;GO TO STORE
4A08 3E46       00240 TEST   LD      A,46H           ;BIT B,(HL) INSTRUCTION
4A0A 32304A     00250 TEST10 LD      (INST+1),A      ;STORE 2ND BYTE
4A0D 7A         00260 ADDRES LD      A,D             ;GET Y
4A0E 06FF       00270        LD      B,0FFH          .-1
4A10 04         00280 LOOP   INC     B               ;SUCCESIVE SUBS FOR DIV
4A11 D603       00290        SUB     3               .  BY THREE
4A13 F2104A     00300        JP      P,LOOP          ;GO IF NOT MINUS
4A16 C603       00310        ADD     A,3             ;YQ IN B, YR IN A
4A18 CB27       00320        SLA     A               ;YR*2
4A1A 4F         00330        LD      C,A             ;SAVE YR*2
4A1B 68         00340        LD      L,B             ;YQ TO L
4A1C 2600       00350        LD      H,0             ;YQ IN HL
4A1E 0606       00360        LD      B,6             ;CNT FOR MULTIPLY BY 64
4A20 29         00370 LOOP1  ADD     HL,HL           ;YQ*2
```

```
4A21 10FD       00380           DJNZ    LOOP1           ;GO IF NOT YQ*64
4A23 1600       00390           LD      D,0             ;DE NOW HAS X
4A25 CB3B       00400           SRL     E               ;XQ
4A27 3001       00410           JR      NC,CONT         ;GO IF XR NE 1
4A29 0C         00420           INC     C               ;C NOW HAS YR*2+XR
4A2A 19         00430 CONT      ADD     HL,DE           ;HL NOW HAS YQ*2+XQ
4A2B 11003C     00440           LD      DE,3C00H        ;START OF DISPLAY
4A2E 19         00450           ADD     HL,DE           ;HL NOW HAS DISPLACE
4A2F CB21       00460           SLA     C               ;ALIGN TO FIELD
4A31 CB21       00470           SLA     C
4A33 CB21       00480           SLA     C
4A35 3A3D4A     00490           LD      A,(INST+1)      ;GET INSTRUCTION
4A38 81         00500           ADD     A,C             ;SET FIELD
4A39 323D4A     00510           LD      (INST+1),A      ;STORE
4A3C CB         00520 INST      DEFB    0CBH            ;PERFORM BIT,SET,RES
4A3D 00         00530           DEFB    0               ;WILL BE FILLED IN
4A3E CBFE       00540           SET     7,(HL)          ;FOR GRAPHICS
4A40 C9         00550           RET
0000            00560           END
00000 TOTAL ERRORS
CONT    4A2A
LOOP1   4A20
LOOP    4A10
ADDRES  4A0D
INST    4A3C
TEST    4A08
RESET   4A04
TEST10  4A0A
SET     4A00
```

SECTION III

Appendices

APPENDIX I

Z-80 Instruction Set

A Register Operations

Complement CPL
Decimal DAA
Negate NEG

Adding/Subtracting Two 8-Bit Numbers

A and Another Register
ADC A,r SBC A,r
ADD A,r SUB A,r
A and Immediate Operand
ADC A,n SBC A,n
ADD A,n SUB A,n
A and Memory Operand

ADC A,(HL)	ADD A,(HL)	SBC (HL)	SUB (HL)
ADC A,(IX+d)	ADD A,(IX+d)	SBC (IX+d)	SUB (IX+d)
ADC A,(IY+d)	ADD A,(IY+d)	SBC (IY+d)	SUB (IY+d)

Adding/Subtracting Two 16-Bit Numbers

HL and Another Register Pair
ADC HL,ss ADD HL,ss SBC HL,ss
IX and Anotber Register Pair
ADD IX,pp ADD IY,rr

Bit Instructions

Test Bit

Register	BIT b,r		
Memory	BIT b,(HL)	BIT b,(IX+d)	BIT b,(IY+)

Reset Bit

Register	RES b,r		
Memory	RES b,(HL)	RES b,(IX+d)	RES b,(IY+d)

Set Bit

Register	SET b,r		
Memory	SET b,(HL)	SET b,(IX+d)	SET b,(IY+d)

Carry Flag

Complement CCF
Set SCF

Compare Two 8-Bit Operands

A and Another Register CP r
A and Immediate Operand CP n
A and Memory Operand
CP (HL) CP (IX+d) CP (IY+d)
Block Compare
CPD,CPDR,CPI,CPIR

Decrements and Increments

Single Register
DEC r INC r DEC IX DEC IY INC
Register Pair
DEC ss INC ss DEC IX DEC IY INC IX DEC IY
Memory
DEC HL DEC (IX+d) DEC (IY+d)

Exchanges

DE and HL EX DE,HL
Top of Stack
EX (SP),HL EX (SP),IX EX (SP),IY

Input/Output

I/O To/From A and Port
IN A,(n) OUT (n),A
I/O To/From Register and Port
IN r,(C) OUT (C),r
Block
IND,INDR,INR,INIR,OTDR,OTIR,OUTD,OUTI

Interrupts

Disable DI
Enable EI
Interrupt Mode
IM 0 IM 1 IM 2
Return From Interrupt
RETI RETN

Jumps

Unconditional
JP (HL) JP (IX) JP (IY) JP (nn) JR e
Conditional
JP cc,nn JR C,e JR NZ,e JR Z,e
Special Conditional
DJNZ e

Loads

A Load Memory Operand
LD A,(BC) LD A,(DE) LD A,(nn)

A and Other Registers
LD A,I LD A,R LD I,A LD R,A
Between Registers, 8-Bit
LD r,r'
Immediate 8-Bit
LD r,n
Immediate 16-Bit
LD dd,nn LD IX,nn LD IY,nn
Register Pairs From Other Register Pairs
LD SP,HL LD SP,IX LD SP,IY
From Memory, 8-Bits
LD r,(HL) LD r,(IX+d) LD r,(IY+d)
From Memory, 16-Bits
LD HL,(nn) LD IX,(nn) LD IY,(nn) LD dd,(nn)
Block
LDD,LDDR,LDI,LDIR

Logical Operations 8 Bits With A

A and Another Register
AND r OR r XOR r
A and Immediate Operand
AND n OR n XOR n
A and Memory Operand
AND (HL) OR (HL) XOR (HL)
AND (IX+d) OR (IX+d) XOR (IX+d)
AND (IY+d) OR (IY+d) XOR (IY+d)

Miscellaneous

Halt HALT
No Operation NOP

Prime/Non-Prime

Switch AF
EX AF,AF'
Switch Others
EXX

Shifts

Circular (Rotate)
A Only RLA, RLCA, RRA, RRCA
All Registers RL r RLC r RR r RRC r
Memory
RL (HL) RLC (HL) RR (HL) RRC (HL)
RL (IX+d) RLC (IX+d) RR (IX+d) RRC (IX+d)
RL (IY+d) RLC (IY+d) RR (IY+d) RRC (IY+d)
Logical
Registers SRL r
Memory SRL (HL) SRL (IX+d) SRL (IY+d)
Arithmetic
Registers SLA r SRA r
Memory
SLA (HL) SRA (HL)
SLA (IX+d) SRA (IX+d)
SLA (IY+d) SRA (IY+d)

Stack Operations

PUSH IX PUSH IY PUSH qq POP IX POP IY POP qq

Stores

Of A Only
LD (BC),A LD (DE),A LD (HL),A LD (nn),A
All Registers
LD (HL),r LD (IX+d),r LD (IY+d),r
Immediate Data
LD (HL),n LD (IX+d),n LD (IY+d),n
16-Bit Registers
LD ((nn),dd LD (nn),IX LD (nn),IY

Subroutine Action

Conditional CALLs CALL cc,nn
Unconditional CALLs CALL nn
Conditional Return RET cc
Unconditional Return RET cc
Special CALL RST p

APPENDIX II

Z-80 Operation Code Listings

Mnemonic	Format			Description	S	Z	P/V	C
ADC HL,ss	11101101	01ss1010		HL+ss+CY to HL	●	●	●	●
ADC A,r	10001 r			A+r+CY to A	●	●	●	●
ADC A,n	11001110	n		A+n+CY to A	●	●	●	●
ADC A,(HL)	10001110			A+(HL)+CY to A	●	●	●	●
ADC A,(IX+d)	11011101	10001110	d	A+(IX+d)+CY to A	●	●	●	●
ADC A,(IY+d)	11111101	10001110	d	A+(IY+d)+CY to A	●	●	●	●
ADD A,n	11000110	n		A+n to A	●	●	●	●
ADD A,r	10000 r			A+r to A	●	●	●	●
ADD A,(HL)	10000110			A+(HL) to A	●	●	●	●
ADD A,(IX+d)	11011101	10000110	d	A+(IX+d) to A	●	●	●	●
ADD A,(IY+d)	11111101	10000110	d	A+(IY+d) to A	●	●	●	●
ADD HL,ss	00ss1001			HL+ss to HL				●
ADD IX,pp	11011101	00pp1001		IX+pp to IX				●
ADD IY,rr	11111101	00rr1001		IY+rr to IY				●
AND r	10100 r			A AND r to A	●	●	●	0
AND n	11100110	n		A AND n to A	●	●	●	0
AND (HL)	10100110			A AND (HL) to A	●	●	●	0
AND (IX+d)	11011101	10100110	d	A AND (IX+d) to A	●	●	●	0
AND (IY+d)	11111101	10100110	d	A AND (IY+d) to A	●	●	●	0

BIT b,r	11001011	01 b r			Test bit b of r	●	●	●	
BIT b,(HL)	11001011	01 b 110			Test bit b of (HL)	●	●	●	
BIT b,(IX+d)	11011101	11001011	d	01 b 110	Test bit b of (IX+d)	●	●	●	
BIT b,(IY+d)	11111101	11001011	d	01 b 110	Test bit b of (IY+d)	●	●	●	
CALL cc,nn	11 c 100	n	n		CALL subroutine at nn if cc				
CALL nn	11001101	n	n		Unconditionally CALL nn				
CCF	00111111				Complement carry flag				●
CP r	10111 r				Compare A:r	●	●	●	●
CP n	11111110	n			Compare A:n	●	●	●	●
CP (HL)	10111110				Compare A:(HL)	●	●	●	●
CP (IX+d)	11011101	10111110	d		Compare A:(IX+d)	●	●	●	●
CP (IY+d)	11111101	10111110	d		Compare A:(IY+d)	●	●	●	●
CPD	11101101	10101001			Block Compare, no repeat	●	●	●	
CPOR	11101101	10111001			Block Compare, repeat	●	●	●	
CPI	11101101	10100001			Block Compare, no repeat	●	●	●	
CPIR	11101101	10110001			Block Compare, repeat	●	●	●	
CPL	00101111				Complement A (1's comple)				
OAA	00100111				Oecimal Adjust A	●	●	●	
OEC r	00 r 101				Oecrement r by one	●	●	●	
OEC (HL)	00110101				Decrement (HL) by one	●	●	●	

Mnemonic	Format			Description	S	Z	P/V	C
DEC (IX+d)	11011101	00110101	d	Decrement (IX+d) by one	●	●	●	
DEC (IY+d)	11111101	00110101	d	Decrement (IY+d) by one	●	●	●	
DEC IX	11011101	00101011		Decrement IX by one				
DEC IY	11111101	00101011		Decrement IY by one				
DEC ss	00ss1011			Decrement register pair				
DI	11110011			Disable interrupts				
DJNZ e	00010000	e-2		Decrement B and JR if B≠0				
EI	11111011			Enable interrupts				
EX (SP),HL	11100011			Exchange (SP) and HL				
EX (SP),IX	11011101	11100011		Exchange (SP) and IX				
EX (SP),IY	11111101	11100011		Exchange (SP) and IY				
EX AF,AF'	00001000			Set prime AF active				
EX DE,HL	11101011			Exchange DE and HL				
EXX	11011001			Set prime B-L active				
HALT	01110110			Halt				
IM 0	11101101	01000110		Set interrupt mode 0				
IM 1	11101101	01010110		Set interrupt mode 1				
IM 2	11101101	01011110		Set interrupt mode 2				
IN A,(n)	11011011	n		Load A with input from n				

Instruction	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3	Description			
IN r,(C)	11101101	01 r 000		Load r with input from (C)	●	●	●
INC r	00 r 100			Increment r by one	●	●	●
INC (HL)	00110100			Increment (HL) by one	●	●	●
INC (IX+d)	11011101	00110100	d	Increment (IX+d) by one	●	●	●
INC (IY+d)	11111101	00110100	d	Increment (IY+d) by one	●	●	●
INC IX	11011101	00100011		Increment IX by one			
INC IY	11111101	00100011		Increment IY by one			
INC ss	00ss0011			Increment register pair			
IND	11101101	10101010		Block I/O input from (C)	●	●	●
INDR	11101101	10111010		Block I/0 input, repeat	●	●	●
INI	11101101	10100010		Block I/O input from (C)	●	●	●
INIR	11101101	10110010		Block I/0 input, repeat	●	●	●
JP (HL)	11101001			Unconditional jump to (HL)			
JP (IX)	11011101	11101001		Unconditional jump to (IX)			
JP (IY)	11111101	11101001		Unconditional jump to (IY)			
JP cc,nn	11 c 010	n	n	Jump to nn if cc			
JP nn	11000011	n	n	Unconditional jump to nn			
JR C,e	00111000	e-2		Jump relative if carry			
JR e	00011000	e-2		Unconditional jump relative			
JR NC,e	00110000	e-2		Jump relative if no carry			

Mnemonic	Format				Description	S	Z	P/V	C
JR NZ,e	00100000	e-2			Jump relative if non-zero				
JR Z,e	00101000	e-2			Jump relative if zero				
LO A,(BC)	00001010				Load A with (BC)				
LO A,(0E)	00011010				Load A with (DE)				
LD A,I	11101101	01010111			Load A with I	●	●	●	
LD A,(nn)	00111010	n	n		Load A with location nn				
LO A,R	11101101	01011111			Load A with R	●	●	●	
LD (BC),A	00000010				Store A to (BC)				
LO (DE),A	00010010				Store A to (0E)				
LO (HL),n	00110110	n			Store n to (HL)				
LO dd,nn	00dd0001	n	n		Load register pair with nn				
LO dd,(nn)	11101101	01dd1011	n	n	Load register pair with location nn				
LO HL,(nn)	00101010	n	n		Load HL with location nn				
LD (HL),r	01110 r				Store r to (HL)				
LO I,A	11101011	01000111			Load I with A				
LD IX,(nn)	11011101	00101010	n	n	Load IX with nn				
LD IX,nn	11011101	00100001	n	n	Load IX with location nn				
LD (IX+d),n	11011101	00110110	d	n	Store n to (IX+d)				
LD (IX+d),r	11011101	01110 r	d		Store r to (IX+d)				

Instruction	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3	Byte 4	Description	
LD IY,nn	11111101	00100001	n	n	Load IY with nn	
LD IY,(nn)	11111101	00101010	n	n	Load IY with location nn	
LD (IY+d),n	11111101	00110110	d	n	Store n to (IY+d)	
LD (IY+d),r	11111101	01110 r	d		Store r to (IY+d)	
LD (nn),A	00110010	n	n		Store A to location nn	
LD (nn),dd	11101101	01dd0011	n	n	Store register pair to loc'n nn	
LD (nn),HL	00100010	n	n		Store HL to location nn	
LD (nn),IX	11011101	00100010	n	n	Store IX to location nn	
LD (nn),IY	11111101	00100010	n	n	Store IY to location nn	
LD R,A	11101101	01001111			Load R with A	
LD r,r'	01 r r'				Load r with r'	
LD r,n	00 r 110	n			Load r with n	
LD r,(HL)	01 r 110				Load r with (HL)	
LD r,(IX+d)	11011101	01 r 110	d		Load r with (IX+d)	
LD r,(IY+d)	11111101	01 r 110	d		Load rf with (IY+d)	
LD SP,HL	11111001				Load SP with HL	
LD SP,IX	11011101	11111001			Load SP with IX	
LD SP,IY	11111101	11111001			Load SP with IY	
LDD	11101101	10101000			Block load, f'ward, no repeat	●
LDDR	11101101	10111000			Block load, f'ward, repeat	0

Mnemonic	Format			Description	S	Z	P/V	C
LDI	11101101	1010000		Block load, b'ward, no repeat			●	
LOIR	11101101	10110000		Block load b'ward, repeat			0	
NEG	11101101	01000100		Negate A (two's complement)	●	●	●	●
NOP	00000000			No operation				
OR r	10110 r			A OR r to A	●	●	●	0
OR n	11110110	n		A OR n to A	●	●	●	0
OR (HL)	10110110			A OR (HL) to A	●	●	●	0
OR (IX+d)	11011101	10110110	d	A OR (IX+d) to A	●	●	●	0
OR (IY+d)	11111101	10110110	d	A OR (IY+d) to A	●	●	●	0
OTDR	11101101	10111011		Block output, b'ward, repeat	●	●	●	
OTIR	11101101	10110011		Block output, f'ward, repeat	●	●	●	
OUT (C),r	11101101	01 r 001		Output r to (C)				
OUT (n),A	11010011	n		Output A to port n				
OUTO	11101101	10101011		Block output, b'ward, no rpt	●	●	●	
OUTI	11101101	10100011		Block output, f'ward, no rpt	●	●	●	
POP IX	11011101	11100001		Pop IX from stack				
POP IY	11111101	11100001		Pop IY from stack				
POP qq	11qq0001			Pop qq from stack				
PUSH IX	11011101	11100101		Push IX onto stack				

Mnemonic	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3	Byte 4	Description				
PUSH IY	11111101	11100101			Push IY onto stack				
PUSH qq	11qq0101				Push qq onto stack				
RES b,r	11001011	10 b r			Reset bit b of r				
RES b,(HL)	11001011	10 b 110			Reset bit b of (HL)				
RES b,(IX+d)	11011101	11001011	d	10 b 110	Reset bit b of (IX+d)				
RES b,(IY+d)	11111101	11001011	d	10 b 110	Reset bit b of (IY+d)				
RET	11001001				Return from subroutine				
RET cc	11 c 000				Return from subroutine if cc				
RETI	11101101	01001101			Return from interrupt				
RETN	11101101	01000101			Return from non-maskable int				
RL r	11001011	00010 r			Rotate left thru carry r	●	●	●	●
RL (HL)	11001011	00010110			Rotate left thru carry (HL)	●	●	●	●
RL (IX+d)	11011101	11001011	d	00010110	Rotate left thru carry (IY+d)	●	●	●	●
RL (IY+d)	11010101	11001011	d	00000110	Rotate left thru carry (IY+d)	●	●	●	●
RLA	00010111				Rotate A left thru carry				●
RLC r	11001011	00000 r			Rotate left circular r	●	●	●	●
RLC (HL)	11001011	00000110			Rotate left circular (HL)	●	●	●	●
RLC (IX+d)	11011101	11001011	d	00000110	Rotate left circular (IX+d)	●	●	●	●
RLC (IY+d)	11111101	11001011	d	00000110	Rotate left circular (IY+d)	●	●	●	●
RLCA	00000111				Rotate left circular A				●

Mnemonic	Format				Description	S	Z	P/V	C
RLD	11101101	01101111			Rotate bcd digit left (HL)	●	●	●	
RR r	11001011	00011 r			Rotate right thru carry r	●	●	●	●
RR (HL)	11001011	00011110			Rotate right thru carry (HL)	●	●	●	●
RR (IX+d)	11011101	11001011	d	00011110	Rotate right thru cy (IX+d)	●	●	●	●
RR (IY+d)	00011110	11001011	d	00011110	Rotate left thru cy (IY+d)	●	●	●	●
RRA	00011111				Rotate A right thru carry				●
RRC r	11001011	00001 r			Rotate r right circular	●	●	●	●
RRC (HL)	11001011	00001110			Rotate (HL) right circular	●	●	●	●
RRC (IX+d)	11011101	11001011	d	00001110	Rotate (IX+d) right circular	●	●	●	●
RRC (IY+d)	11111101	11001011	d	00001110	Rotate (IY+d) right circular	●	●	●	●
RRCA	00001111				Rotate A right circular				●
RRD	11101101	01100111			Rotate bcd digit right (HL)	●	●	●	
RST p	11 t 110				Restart to location p				
SBC A,r	10011 r				A-r-CY to A	●	●	●	●
SBC A,n	11011110	n			A-n-CY to A	●	●	●	●
SBC A,(HL)	10011110				A-(HL)-CY to A	●	●	●	●
SBC A,(IX+d)	11011101	10011110	d		A-(IX+d)-CY to A	●	●	●	●
SBC A,(IY+d)	11111101	10011110	d		A-(IY+d)-CY to A	●	●	●	●
SBC HL,ss	11101101	01ss0010			HL-ss-CY to HL	●	●	●	●

Instruction	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3	Byte 4	Description				
SCF	00110111				Set carry flag				1
SET b,(HL)	11001011	11 b 110			Set bit b of (HL)				
SET b,(IX+d)	11011101	11001011	d	11 b 110	Set bit b of (IX+d)				
SET b,(IY+d)	11111101	11001011	d	11 b 110	Set bit b of (IY+d)				
SET b,r	11001011	11 b r			Set bit b of r				
SLA r	11001011	00100 r			Shift r left arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SLA (HL)	11001011	00100110			Shift (HL) left arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SLA (IX+d)	11011101	11001011	d	00100110	Shift (IX+d) left arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SLA (IY+d)	11111101	11001011	d	00100110	Shift (IY+d) left arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SRA r	11001011	00101 r			Shift r right arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SRA (HL)	11001011	00101110			Shift (HL) right arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SRA IX+d)	11011101	11001011	d	00101110	Shift (IX+d) right arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SRA (IY+d)	11111101	11001011	d	00101110	Shift (IY+d) right arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SRL r	11001011	00111 r			Shift r right logical	●	●	●	●
SRL (HL)	11001011	00111110			Shift (HL) right arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SRL (IX+d)	11011101	11001011	d	00111110	Shift (IX+d) right arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SRL (IY+d)	11111101	11001011	d	00111110	Shift (IY+d) right arithmetic	●	●	●	●
SUB r	10010 r				A-r to A	●	●	●	●
SUB n	11010110	n			A-n to A	●	●	●	●
SUB (HL)	10010110				A-(HL) to A	●	●	●	●

Mnemonic	Format			Description	S	Z	P/V	C
SUB (IX+d)	11011101	10010110	d	A-(IX+d) to A	●	●	●	●
SUB (IY+d)	11111101	10010110	d	A-(IY+d) to A	●	●	●	●
XOR r	10101 r			A EXCLUSIVE OR r to A	●	●	●	0
XOR n	11101110	n		A EXCLUSIVE OR n to A	●	●	●	0
XOR (HL)	10101110			A EXCLUSIVE OR (HL) to A	●	●	●	0
XOR (IX+d)	11011101	10101110	d	A EXCLUSIVE OR (IX+d) to A	●	●	●	0
XOR (IY+d)	11111101	10101110	d	A EXCLUSIVE OR (IY+d) to A	●	●	●	0

Key:

Instruction Fields:

- b bit field 0-7
- c condition field 0=NZ, 1=Z, 2=NC, 3=C
  4=PO, 5=PE, 6=P, 7=M
- d indexing displacement +127 to −128
- dd register pair: 0=BC, 1=DE, 2=HL, 3=SP
- e relative jump displacement +127 to −128
- n immediate or address value
- pp register pair: 0=BC, 1=DE, 2=IX, 3=SP
- qq register pair: 0=BC, 1=DE, 2=IY, 3=SP
- r register: 0=B, 1=C, 2=D, 3=E, 4=H, 5=L, 7=A
- r′ register: same as r
- ss register pair: 0=BC, 1=DE, 2=HL, 3=SP
- t RST field: Location=t*8

Condition Codes:

- ● = affected
- 0 = reset
- 1 = set
- = unaffected

Index

A

A bcd add with erroneous result, 125
Access, memory, 27
Accumulator, 34
  register, 19
Action, subroutine, 208
Adding and subtracting
  8-bit numbers, 113-115, 205
  15-bit numbers, 115-119, 205
Address
  effective, 22
  symbolic, 53
Addressing
  bit, 57
  direct, 42, 49-51
  immediate, 43-45
  implied, 42
  indexed, 42, 54-57
  index register, 47
  register pair, 47
  relative, 52-53
  screen, 59
ALU, 19
AND, ORs, and Exclusive ORs, 131-134
An elegant block move, 95-100
An unsopbisticated block move, 94-95
Arcbitecture, Z-80, 18
A register operations, 205
Arithmetic
  logical, and compare, 31-34
  shift operation, 140
  shifts, 139-140
ASCII representation of decimal and hexadecimal, 132
Assembler
  formats, 55-57
  -generated strings, 151-152
Assembling, 54-55
Assembly-language
  coding, 58
  listing, typical, 25
Assembly operations, 54

B

Bcd corrections, 127
Binary
  data, 13
  notation, 14
  number, 13
Bit, 14
  addressing, 57
  instructions, 134, 205
  least significant, 57
  most significant, 57
  operations, 39-40
Block
  compare, 34, 155-158
  input/output, 40
  move, unsopbisticated, 94-95
Breakpoint, 78
Buffers, I/O, 40
Bubble sort, 154-155
  sample data, 166
Byte, 15
  and word moves, 87-91

C

CALL
  instructions, 36
  stack action, 37
Carry flag, 205
Cassette data waveform, 180

CCF, 42
Chip, microprocessor, 15
CMPARE subroutine, 194-195
Coding
  assembly language, 58
  machine language, 58, 59-61
Command(s)
  C, 82
  L, 82
  P, 82
  T-BUG, 76-81
Comments, 67
Compare
  operations, 128-130
  two 8-bit operands, 206
Computers, sbiftless, 134
Computer system, functional blocks, 11
Conversions
  decimal/binary, 110
  decimal/hexadecimal, 111
  input and output, 147-150
Cpu, 11

D

Data
  binary, 13
  hexadecimal, 13
  movement, 28-31
  transfer for an LDDR, 98
  transfer paths, 31
Decimal
  arithmetic, 125-127
  /binary conversions, 110
  /hexadecimal conversions, 111
  notation, 13
  versus binary numbers, 109
Decrements and increments, 206
Dedicated
  locations, 16
  memory addresses, 168
Decision making and jumps, 34-36
DEFB, 68
DEFL, 71
DEFM, 69
DEFS, 69
DEFW, 68
Desk checking, 62
Devices, I/O, 18
DI, 42
Direct addressing, 42, 49-51
  involving HL, 51
Discrete inputs, 184-188
Display
  memory format, 175
Display—cont
  programming, 174-177
Divide register setup, 146
DIV16 subroutine, 196-198

E

Editing new programs, 63-64
Effective address, 52
EI, 42
EOU, 70
Examples of add and subtract flag bit, 116
Exchanges, 206

F

Family tree, Z-80, 24-26
Fields, 39, 46
File of object code, 64
Filling or padding, 92-94
FILL subroutine, 100, 189-190
Flag register bit positions, 116
Flags, 22
Formats, assembler, 65-67
Form, symbolic, 61
Functional blocks of computer system, 11

G

G command, 79
Ceneralized string output, 152-153
Ceneral table structure, 161
Group, instruction, 28

H

HALT, 42
Hexadecimal
  data, 13
  number, 13
HEXCV subroutines, 198-199

I

Immediate addressing, 43-45
Implied addressing, 42
Increments and decrements, 34
Index register addressing, 47
Indexed addressing, 42, 54-57
Indexing into tables, 160
Indirect, register, 48-49
Input
  buffer, 154
  and output conversions, 147-150
  /output, 206
Inputting external data, 185
Instructional set, 15

Instruction(s), bit, 134
  CALL, 36
  group, 28
  length of, 26-27
  restart, 54-57
  Z-80, 24-40
Interrupts, 206
I/O, 11
  buffers, 40
  devices, 18
  instruction format, 170
  operations, 40
  ports and port addressing, 171

J

Jump
  action, relative, 53
  and CALL format, 51
Jumps, 206

K

Keyboard
  addressing, 169
  decoding, 172-174

L

L command, 82
Least significant
  bit, 57
  registers, 30
Length of an instruction, 26-27
LIFO stack, 21
Load, 28, 206
Loading, 65
  and using T-BUG, 75-76
Locations, dedicated, 16
Logical
  operations, 33, 207
  shifting, 137-139
  shift operation, 138

M

Machine-language coding, 58, 59-61
Mark II version of store "1"
    program, 72-74
Matrix decoding, 172
Memory, 11
  access, 27
  arrangement for 16-bit data, 30
  mapping
    TRS-80, 17
    with I/O addresses, 168
  RAM, 16
  ROM, 16
  stack, 21
  versus I/O, 167-172
Message buffer, 153
Microprocessor
  chip, 15
  Z-80, 16
Mnemonic, 29
Modifying instructions, 176
More pseudo-ops, 68-71
Most significant
  bit, 57
  registers, 30
Movement, data, 28-31
MOVE subroutine, 101, 190-191
Moves, byte and word, 87-91
MULADD subroutine, 191-193
MUL 16 subroutine, 195-196
MULSUB subroutine, 193-194
MULTEN, 138
Multiplication methods, 142
Multiple-precision adds by manual
    methods, 120
Mysteries of the cassette, 179-183

N

New programs, editing, 63-64
NOP, 42
Notation
  binary, 14
  decimal, 13
  two's complement, 112
Number
  binary, 13
  formats, 108-110
  hexadecimal, 13

O

Operations
  assembly, 64
  bit, 39-40
  I/O, 40
  logical, 33
  shifting and bit, 38-40
  stack, 36-38
Ordered tables, 163-165
ORG, 62
Outputting data to the external
    world, 187
Overflow conditions, 114

P

Patching technique, 81-82
PC, 19-20
P command, 82
Precision instrument, 120-123
Prime/non-prime, 207
Pseudo-operation, 62

PUSH stack action, 38

R

RAM memory, 16
Real-world interfacing, 184
Register
  accumulator, 19
  addressing, 45-47
  indirect, 48-49
  least significant, 30
  locations, T-BUG, 80
  most significant, 30
  pair
    addressing, 47
    data arrangements, 29
  SP, 37
Relative
  addressing, 52-53
  jump action, 53
Reserved words, 65
Restart instruction, 54
ROM memory, 16
Rotate operation, 136
Rotates, 134
RST, 53

S

Sample
  add operation, 32
  table of
    disc files, 162
    T-BUG commands, 159
SCF, 42
Screen
  addressing, 59
  coordinate algorithm, 177
SEARCH subroutine, 199-200
Set, instructional, 15
SET, RESET, and TEST subroutines, 200-202
Shifting and bit operations, 38-40
Shiftless computers, 134
Shifts, 207
  in the Z-80, 39
Signed numbers, 110-113
SLA, 139
Software multiply and divide, 140-146
Source code, 64
SP, 20
  register, 37
Square wave tones, 181
SRA, 139
Stack
  action
    CALL, 37
    PUSH, 38
  operations, 36-38, 103-107, 208
Store, 28, 208
String input, 154-155
Subroutine
  action, 208
  CMPARE, 194-195
  DIV16, 196-198
  FILL, 189-190
  format, 102
  HEXCV, 198-199
  MOVE, 101, 190-191
  MULADD, 191-193
  MUL16, 195-196
  MULSUB, 193-194
  SEARCH, 199-200
  SET, RESET, and TEST, 200-202
Symbolic
  address, 63
  form, 61

T

Table searches, 158-161
T-BUG
  commands, 76-81
  register locations, 80
  tape formats, 81-83
The bcd representation, 126
TRS-80
  Editor/Assembler, 61-63
  memory mapping, 17
Two's complement notation, 112
Typical assembly-language listing, 26

U

Unordered tables, 161-162

W

Words, reserved, 65

Z

Z-80
  architecture, 18
  family tree, 24-26
  instructions, 24-40
  microprocessor, 16

Radio Shack®

A TANDY CORPORATION COMPANY